

# THE CRITICAL MOMENT

by the Grandmaster Iossif DORFMAN



**Iossif Dorfman**

**THE  
CRITICAL  
MOMENT**

**Published and distributed by :**

GAME MIND Ltd

5 Jupiter House

Calleva Park, Aldermaston

Reading, Berks, ENGLAND

e-mail : [order@game-mind.com](mailto:order@game-mind.com)website : <http://www.game-mind.com>

All rights reserved for all countries

© Copyright 2002 : Iossif Dorfman &amp; Game Mind Ltd

ISBN : 2-84735-002-0

Printed in Europe

**Staff :**

Managing Director : GM David Marciano

Editorial Director : GM Gilles Miralles

Translated from Russian to English by Ken Neat

**Acknowledgments :**

Nathalie Duchêne, Bouchra Msittef-Miralles, Reinhard Henze, Daniel Gurtner, Tony Kosten and Stevens Rouchouse.

Special thanks to Ken Neat for his useful suggestions.

# SUMMARY

## **Introduction**

1.	The static position of the king	9
1A.	The king may be attacked	9
1B.	The concept of a secure shelter	45
2.	The exchange of material	59
3.	Modification of the pawn structure	95

<b>Index of players</b>	139
-------------------------	-----

<b>Index of openings</b>	141
--------------------------	-----

In chess, as in life, we are constantly subjected to tests. We are immersed in a world of struggle, which demands that we be constantly on the alert. We need to be able to carry out our ideas, to achieve recognition.

In this book I have tried to describe a method of operating in positions where a serious change in the development of the game is possible. It may be used as reference material for chess trainers, for example, in looking for elements that are important for the preparation of lessons. Players who are already familiar with my first book *The Method in Chess* can now deepen and improve their knowledge of the laws of chess combat.

The method proposed by me for analysing the critical moment is the result of my experience and research, the synthesis of my career as a player and a trainer.

From now on it belongs to you.

**Iossif Dorfman**

**Cannes 2002**

# INTRODUCTION

From the very start of a chess game, exchanges take place, sometimes without us being aware of them. These are not only exchanges of material.

Here we are talking about exchanges in the broad sense of the word. In return for one of the advantages acquired, something else is conceded to the opponent.

The balance remains intact if the exchange is, so to speak, an equivalent one. But beginning from this moment it becomes dynamic. In other words, one of the players possesses a static advantage, whereas the other tries to exploit the concrete features of the position.

Even for an experienced player the terms '**static**' and '**dynamic**' are not always correctly understood. They are often confused with '**strategy**' and '**tactics**'. The new terminology can in general cause certain difficulties. Before I start developing the topic, I should like now to clarify the meaning of some frequently used expressions.

**Statically good** is the name given to a position that has a solid foundation. It is ready for constant improvement, for evolution **independently of the opponent's position**.

In contrast to this, a **statically weak** position is one that is restricted in its evolutive possibilities. It demands **contact with the opposing army**, which it will aim to destroy by rapid and effective action.

In the book a study is made of the **elements peculiar to dynamism**, such as **changes in the pawn structure, the exchange of material, and the seizure of the initiative**.

Bearing in mind the important role of the king's position in chess, I have devoted the first chapter to it. Here I wanted to remind the reader of the need to distinguish clearly between the static and dynamic position of the king.

In chess, analysis is a fundamental tool. It enables a comparison to be made of the situation before and after a critical position, the resultant changes to be seen, and interesting estimative variations to be illustrated.

In order to be sure that the reader and the author are on the same wavelength, I should like to clarify the symbols employed in the book:

- ! – **strong move**
- !! – **very strong move**
- ? – **weak move**
- ?? – **blunder**
- !?! – **move that deserves consideration**
- ?! – **dubious move**

For the reader who has not managed to make the acquaintance of my first book *The Method in Chess*, I should recall the descending scale\* used for drawing up the static evaluation\*:

## 1. STATIC KING POSITION

## 2. MATERIAL CORRELATION

## 3. WHO HAS THE BETTER POSITION AFTER THE EXCHANGE OF QUEENS?

## 4. PAWN FORMATION

The symbols employed to characterise the stages of the evaluation are similar to the symbols employed for the assessment of a position:

**= : equality**  
**± : slight advantage to White**  
**± : clear advantage to White**  
**∓ : slight advantage to Black**  
**∓ : clear advantage to Black**

When working on such a project, mistakes are inevitable. The author fully acknowledges them and will be grateful to readers who suggest corrections.

\* In *The Method in Chess* the terms ‘regressive scale’ and ‘static balance’ were used. It was suggested to me by Phil Adams that ‘descending scale’ and ‘static evaluation’ would have expressed the author’s ideas more clearly, and I am happy to agree with his suggestion (Translator’s note).

# 1. THE STATIC POSITION OF THE KING

During my numerous training sessions and individual lessons, players often ask questions concerning the static position of the king. It is obvious that in the majority of cases the first rung on the scale determines the static evaluation of the position. The role of this element is hard to over-estimate. In my view, **the king may be statically weak** in two cases:

1. The king may be easily attacked
2. For the king there is no secure shelter on the board

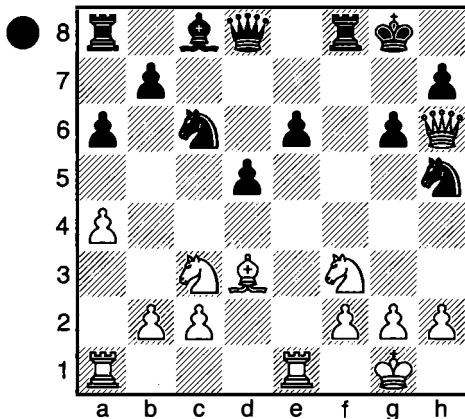
Here are the main means of counterplay for the side whose king may be attacked:

1. The exchange of the opponent's active pieces, especially the queen
2. Modification of the pawn structure and the type of centre
3. Fighting for the initiative, sacrificing material if necessary

In practically all of the positions analysed below I have indicated the dynamic means which should have been employed, depending on the demands of the situation.

# 1A. THE KING MAY BE ATTACKED

**A. Shabalov – A. Vitols**  
Yurmala 1985



The static evaluation:

$$1. \pm 2. = 3. = 4. \pm$$

is advantageous to White, who is threatening 18. ♖xg6 hxg6 19. ♜xg6+ ♔g7 20. ♘g5. Black's dynamic possibilities are restricted. Thus 17... ♜f6 encounters a tactical refutation: 18. ♘g5 ♜xf2+? 19. ♔h1 ♘f6 20. ♜f1. In accordance with the demands of the situation, Black chose:

$$17. \dots \quad \text{♜xf3}$$

$$18. \quad \text{gxf3}$$

After these moves the position has changed significantly:

$$1. \mp 2. \pm 3. \pm 4. \mp$$

And, as a consequence, in the next phase of the game **White must employ dynamic means** (in this case the exchange of the opponent's active pieces).

$$18. \dots \quad \text{♘d4}$$

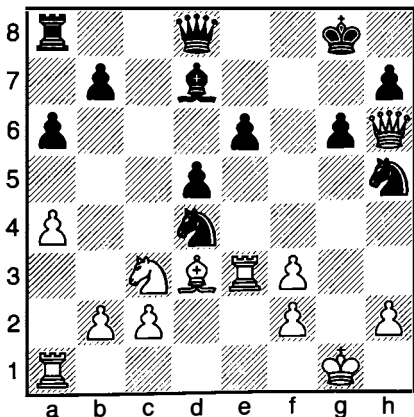
$$19. \quad \text{♜e3}$$

The important alternative 19. ♜e3 leads after 19... ♜f6 20. f4 ♘xf4 21. ♔f1 e5 to a situation where the white pieces lack coordination.

$$19. \dots \quad \text{♘d7 (D)}$$

Black emphasises the static nature of his superiority.





Position after 19... d7

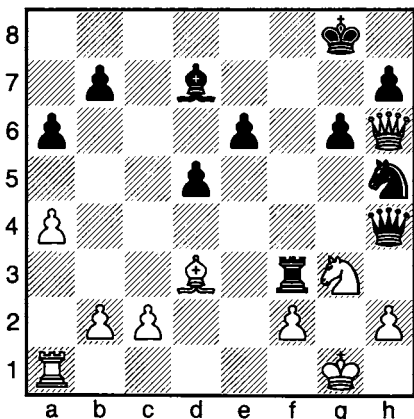
20. ♖h1?

The young Latvian player does not sense the dynamic nature of the play. He marks time and this inevitably leads to disaster, whereas after the exchange 20. ♖e2! ♗xe2+ 21. ♗xe2 ♖f6 22. ♗e3 the battle would have intensified.

20. ... ♗h4  
 21. ♖g1 ♗f8  
 22. ♗e2

Too late.

22. ... ♗xf3+  
 23. ♗xf3 ♗xf3  
 24. ♗g3



24. ... ♗xf2

This little combination secures Black an enduring attack.

25. ♖xf2 ♗xh2+  
 26. ♖e3 ♗xg3+  
 27. ♖d2 e5  
 28. ♗f1 ♗f4  
 29. ♗h1 ♗h3  
 30. ♖c1 e4  
 31. ♗xe4

Desperation. If 31. ♗f1, then 31... ♗e1 mate.

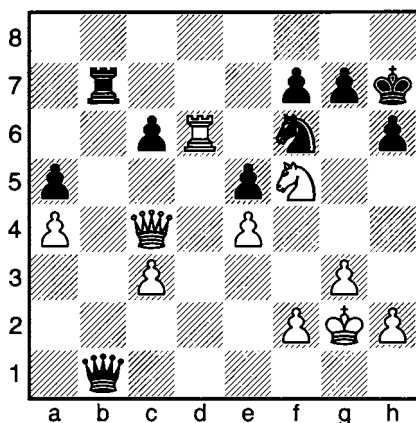
31. ... dxe4

The outcome is decided, but because of the time scramble White prolongs the game.

32. ♗d1 ♗e6 33. ♖b1 ♗f8 34. ♗d8 ♖e1+  
 35. ♖a2 ♗e6+ 36. b3 ♖f2 37. ♗d2 ♖f3  
 38. ♖g5 ♖c3 39. ♗e2 ♗f5 40. ♖b1 h5  
 41. ♗g2 ♖f3 42. ♗g3 ♗e6 0-1

L.Psakhis – H.Schussler

Lugano 1988



Static evaluation:

1. ♣ 2. = 3. ± 4. ±

Black is attacking the e4 pawn and preparing threats along the first rank. Psakhis finds a subtle decision, one typical of him at his best.

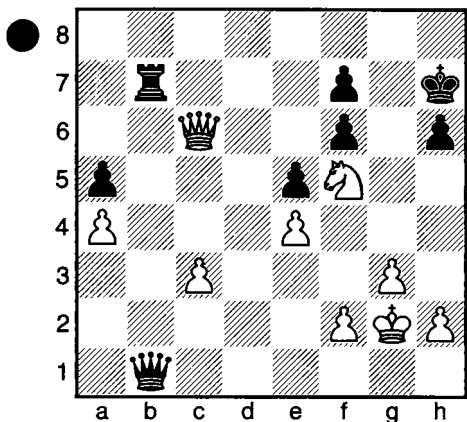
30. ♗xf6 gxf6

What has the evaluation for the next phase become?

1. ± 2. ♣ 3. ♣ 4. ±  
 31. ♖xc6

A strong and obvious move. The other attempt to approach the black king by 31.♖e2 was doomed to failure in view of 31...♖c1 32.h4 ♖b1.

and 16.♘d5. After 16.♘d5 ♙xd5 17.exd5 ♙e7 the fragile position of the white king will determine the outcome. More resolute measures are required:



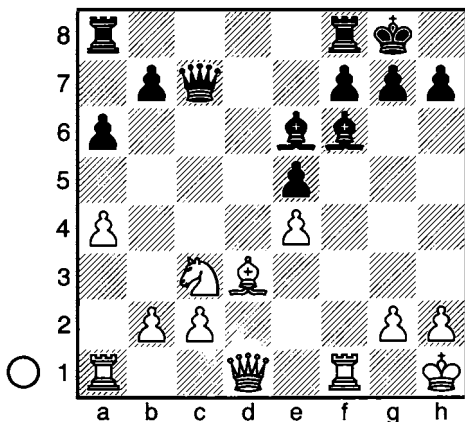
31. ... ♔g6

A static manoeuvre, which loses immediately. But as analysis shows, here even dynamic defence does not help: 31...♖b6 (if 31...♖b6 32.♖c4 ♔g6 33.♘e7+ ♔g7 34.♖e2 ♖c1 35.♖g4+ ♖g5 36.♖c8 ♔h7 37.h4 ♖g7 38.c4 and White retains the advantage) 32.♖c8 (32.♖e8 ♖b1):

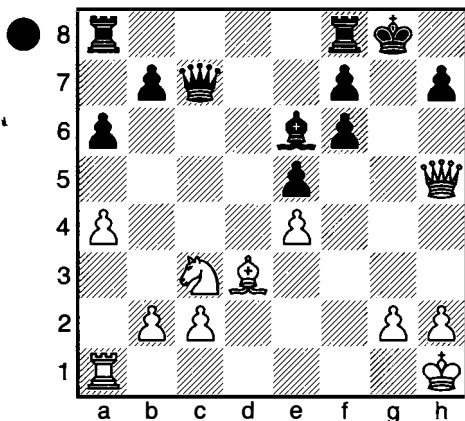
A) 32...♖b1 33.♘d6;  
 B) 32...♖b8 33.♖d7 ♖b7 (33...♖b7 34.♖d3 ♖g8 35.c4 ♖g5 36.♖d5 ♖xd5 37.exd5 ♔g6 38.♘e7+ does not bring any relief) 34.♖d2.

32. ♘d6 ♖b6  
 33. ♖e8

Here the Swedish player resigned. Mate is inevitable after 33...♖xd6 34.♖g8+ ♔h5 35.♖xf7+ ♔g5 36.h4+.



16. ♖xf6 gxf6  
 17. ♖h5



I.Glek – V.Malisauskas

Tallinn 1986

In this position Black has a static advantage in view of his **bishop pair together with a changeable pawn structure.**

1. = 2. ♖ 3. ♖ 4. ±

After ♙e7 it will become irreversible. **Dynamic candidate moves** here are 16.♖xf6

In the course of a couple of moves the static evaluation has changed significantly:

1. ± 2. ♖ 3. ♖ 4. ±

Therefore Black must play **dynamically.** Here this involves exchanges and fighting for the initiative.

The approximate variation 17...♔h8! 18.♘d5 (18.♖h6 ♖d8 19.♖f1 ♖g8 does not bring any particular dividends) 18...♖d8

19. ♖f1 (after 19. ♖h6 ♗g8 20. ♘xf6 ♗g7 21. ♖f1 ♖d4 22. ♖f3 ♖xb2 23. h3 ♖a1+ 24. ♔h2 ♖e1 Black parries the attack) 19...f5 20.exf5 ♔xd5 21.f6 e4 meets the demands of the position.

17. ... ♔g7?

The decisive mistake, based on an inadequate understanding of the need for dynamic play.

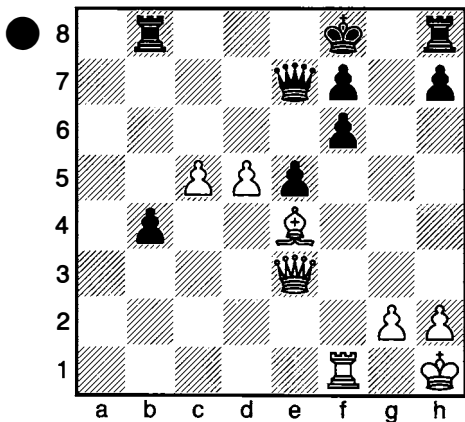
18. ♖f1 ♔h8  
19. ♖h4 ♖e7  
20. ♘d5

In this type of situation it is not advisable to be diverted by regaining the material. After the primitive 20. ♘e2 h5 21. ♘g3 ♗h6 22. ♘xh5+ ♔h8 23. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 Black's dreams would have been realised.

20. ... ♔xd5  
21. exd5 ♗ad8  
22. c4 a5  
23. ♔e4 b6

The Lithuanian player has set up a barrier, but it turns out to be insufficient. By means of a breakthrough White creates a pair of passed pawns, which sweep away everything in their path.

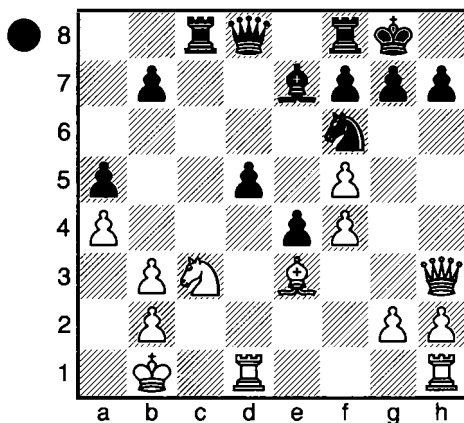
24. b4 axb4  
25. a5 ♗d6  
26. axb6 ♗xb6  
27. ♖g3+ ♔f8  
28. ♖e3 ♗b8  
29. c5



The last link of an excellently conducted attack. Here the curtain could have been lowered.

29...h5 30.d6 ♖e6 31. ♖d3 b3 32.c6 ♗b4 33. ♔f5 e4 34. ♔xe6 exd3 35.c7 ♔g7 36.d7 1-0

### A. Fedorov – K. Sakaev USSR 1989



White has an undisputed static advantage:

$$1. \pm 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

He can intensify the pressure on the d5 weakness by 18. ♔d4 or else begin a direct attack on the king after g2-g4. To obtain counter-chances on the opposite wing Black needs to achieve b7-b5.

17. ... ♗xc3!?  
18. bxc3 b5

As before, Black's hopes are associated with dynamics. If White consolidates his forces he will be free to develop his attack against the enemy king.

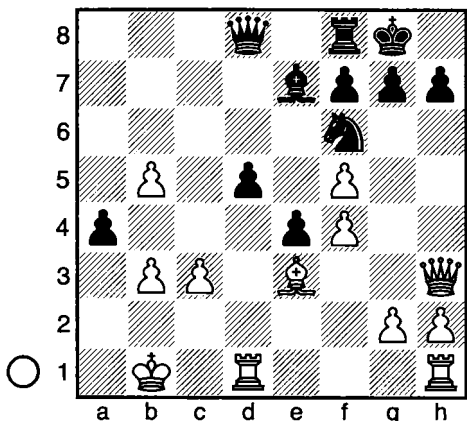
19. axb5 a4! (D)

Sakaev is not afraid to sacrifice in order to force a breach in the opponent's defences. Things would not have been easier for him after 19...♖e8 in view of 20.c4 a4 21. ♔d4.

20. b6?

White chooses an unfortunate moment to engage in open play. After the **static continuation** 20.b4 ♖c7 21. ♔d4 ♖c4 22. ♗d2 Black would have been in great difficulties,

whereas now he is given a chance opportunity.



Position after 19...a4!

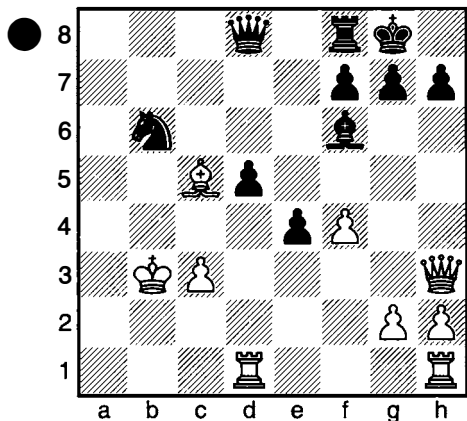
- 20. ... axb3
- 21. ♖b2 ♜d7!
- 22. f6

22. ♜xd5? loses immediately to 22... ♗a8.

- 22. ... ♗xf6
- 23. ♖xb3

In any case the outcome of the game is decided. After 23. ♗f5 ♜xb6 24. ♗xb6 ♗xb6 25. ♗xd5 ♗a7! 26. ♖a1 (26. ♖xb3 ♖b8+ 27. ♖c2 ♗a4+ 28. ♖d2 ♖d8) 26... ♗f2+ 27. ♖xb3 (27. ♖a3 ♗xc3) 27... ♖b8+ 28. ♖c4 ♗e2+ White gets mated.

- 23. ... ♜xb6
- 24. ♗c5



24. ... ♗c7  
and Black easily converted his advantage.

V. Bologan – E. Rozentalis  
Belfort 1998

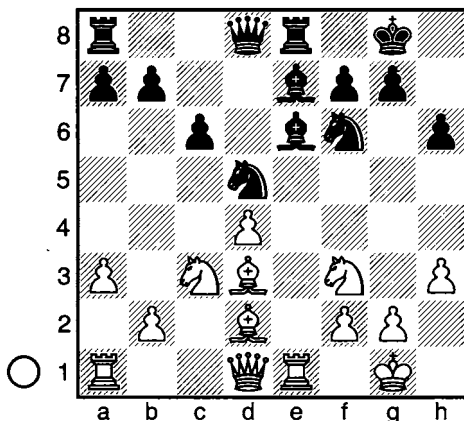
- 1. e4 e5
- 2. ♘f3 ♘f6
- 3. ♘xe5 d6
- 4. ♘f3 ♘xe4
- 5. d4 d5
- 6. ♗d3 ♗e7
- 7. 0-0 ♘c6
- 8. c4 ♘f6
- 9. ♘c3 0-0
- 10. h3 ♘b4
- 11. ♗e2 dxc4
- 12. ♗xc4 c6

At the end of the opening stage the position is one of dynamic equilibrium.

- 13. a3 ♘bd5
- 14. ♖e1 ♗e6
- 15. ♗d3 h6
- 16. ♗d2

The two players develop their forces in a manner typical of this kind of situation. Black's objective is to retain the favourable static evaluation:

- 1. = 2. = 3. ♖ 4. ♖
- 16. ... ♖e8?



Black had two roughly equivalent plans for developing his forces: 16... ♗c8 17. ♗c2

♖e8 followed by ♗d6, ♖c7 and ♖ad8, and 16...♗d6! with the idea of 17...♖ad8.

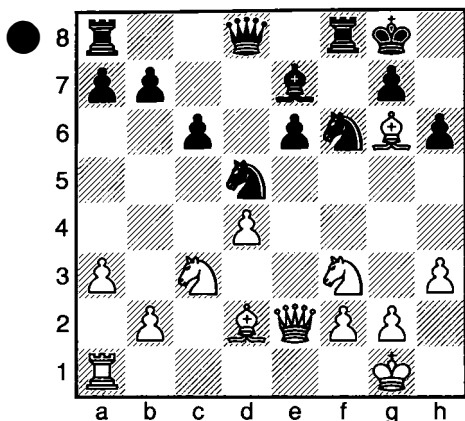
17. ♖xe6!

White exploits the chance opportunity and without hesitation he sacrifices the exchange in order to weaken the squares e5, f7 and g6 around the enemy king.

17. ... fxe6

18. ♗g6 ♖f8

19. ♖e2



19. ... ♖c7?!

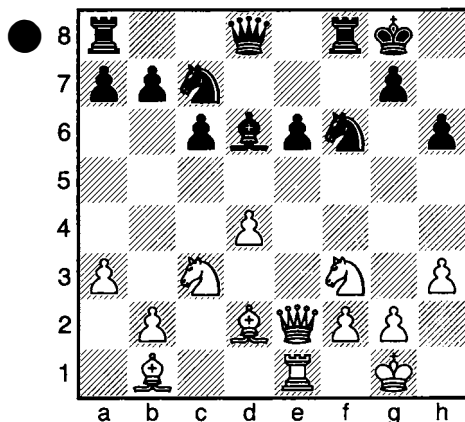
A mistake, caused by an incorrect evaluation of the position – Black was convinced that he needed to defend the e6 pawn. Another possibility 19...♗d6 20.♖e1 does not essentially differ from the game. It is logical that the position **demands** dynamic action and, in this specific case, **exchanges of material**. I suggest 19...♗d6. In this case the knight remains on d5, which is conducive to exchanges. In addition the opponent has to reckon with ♗f4. The variations are very complicated and here it is not easy to suggest anything exhaustive. In the main line 20.♗xe6+ ♗h8 21.♖e5 (21.♖h4 ♖g8!) 21...♖xc3 22.♗xc3 ♖xe5 23.dxe5 ♖d5 Black's strategy triumphs.

20. ♖e1 ♗d6

21. ♗b1 (D) ♖e7

Black misses a convenient moment for 21...c5. Now 22.dxc5 runs into 22...♗xc5

23.♖e4 ♖xe4 24.♗xe4 ♖xf3, while after 22.♖e4 cxd4 23.♖xf6+ ♗xf6 24.♗e4 ♗f5 25.♗xd4 ♗d5 he has a perfectly defensible position.



Position after 21. ♗b1

22. ♖e5 ♗xe5

White's task is now much easier. He eliminates a key pawn while retaining play against the insecure black king.

23. dxe5 ♖fd5

24. ♖xd5 ♖xd5

25. ♗e4 g5

26. ♗g6+ ♗g7

27. ♗xe6+ ♗h8

28. h4 ♖f4

29. ♖c4 ♖ad8

30. ♗c3 ♖d5

31. hxg5 hxg5

32. ♗d2 ♖f4

33. ♗b4 ♗f7

Or 33...♖fe8 34.e6 ♖d4 35.♗c2 ♖xb4 36.axb4 ♖xe6 37.♖xe6 ♖xe6 38.♗f5±.

34. e6 ♖xe6

35. ♗xf8 1-0

V.Anand – A.Yusupov

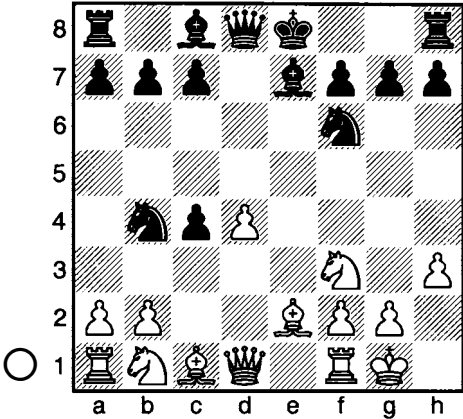
Dortmund 1998

1. e4 e5

2. ♖f3 ♖f6

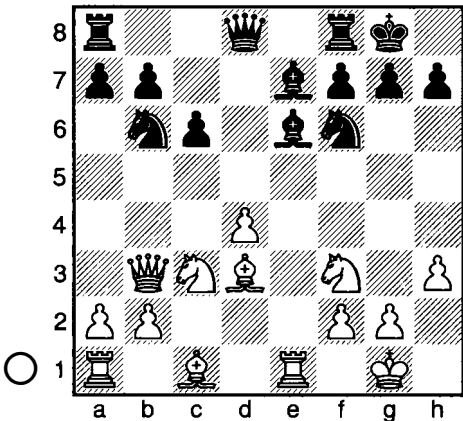
3. ♖xe5 d6

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 4.  | ♖f3 | ♜xe4 |
| 5.  | d4  | d5   |
| 6.  | ♙d3 | ♞c6  |
| 7.  | 0-0 | ♙e7  |
| 8.  | c4  | ♞f6  |
| 9.  | h3  | ♞b4  |
| 10. | ♙e2 | dxc4 |



The character of the play has taken shape. The static evaluation is negative for White, so he is obliged to **respond dynamically**.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 11. | ♙xc4 | 0-0  |
| 12. | ♞c3  | c6   |
| 13. | ♞e1  | ♞bd5 |
| 14. | ♞b3  | ♞b6  |
| 15. | ♙d3  | ♙e6  |



16. ♞c2

Here the sacrifice is clearly premature, being refuted in the fairly simple variation 16. ♞xe6 fxe6 17. ♞g5 ♞xd4 18. ♞xe6 ♞xd3.

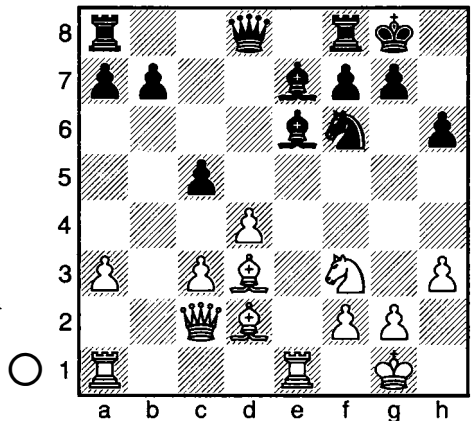
- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 16. | ... | h6   |
| 17. | ♙d2 | ♞bd5 |

In the event of 17... ♞e8 White should hurry, before the opponent plays his bishop to f8. He continues 18. ♞xe6 fxe6 19. ♙g6 ♞f8 20. ♞e1 with an enduring initiative. I still don't see any objection to 17... ♞d6!.

18. a3 ♞xc3

It seems to me that Black misses a very favourable moment to **consolidate** his position by 18... ♞c8 19. ♞a4 ♞c7 20. ♞c5 ♙c8.

19. bxc3 c5



One gains the impression that grandmaster Yusupov does not take seriously the opponent's only threat. His play cannot be described as anything other than provocative, and in addition he has not left White any choice, since 20... ♙d5 followed by cxd4 is threatened. It should be mentioned that this idea was unsuccessful on the previous move in view of 19... ♙d5 20. ♞e5 c5 21. c4.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 20. | ♞xe6 | fxe6 |
| 21. | ♞e1  | ♞d6  |
| 22. | ♙c4  |      |

This natural play is perhaps more correct from the practical standpoint than the ro-

mantic 22. ♖xh6 gxh6 23. ♕c4 ♖h8  
(23... ♖g7 24. ♗xe6 ♗c7 25. ♘e5) 24. ♗xe6  
♗c7 25. ♘e5, retaining a very strong attack.

22. ... ♘d5  
23. ♗e4 ♗ad8  
24. dxc5 ♗xc5  
25. ♖xh6

White's handling of the attack is exemplary. The ending arising after 25. ♗xe6+ ♖h8 26. ♖xd5 ♗xd5 27. ♗xe7 ♗xe7 28. ♗xe7 ♗xf3 29. gxf3 ♗xd2 30. ♗xb7 ♗d3 31. ♗xa7 ♗xc3 32. ♖g2 ♖h7 might have ended in a draw.

25. ... ♗xf3  
26. gxf3 gxh6  
27. ♗xe6+ ♖f8  
28. ♗e5 ♗d6

After 28... ♗xc4 quite sufficient was 29. ♗f5+ ♖e8 30. ♗f7+ ♖d7 31. ♗xd5+ with a decisive material advantage for White.

29. ♗xe7+

With 29. ♗f5+ ♖e8 30. ♗g8+ ♖d7 31. ♖xd5 White could have continued the attack while keeping the queens on.

29... ♘e7 30. ♗xc5 ♗d1+ 31. ♖g2 ♗a1  
32. ♗a5 ♘c6 33. ♗b5 ♗xa3 34. ♗xb7 ♗xc3  
35. ♖d5 ♘e7 36. ♖e4 a5 37. ♗b5 a4 with a draw 28 moves later.

The position in the following diagram is almost symmetric. White must try to exploit his lead in development. In other words, it is essential that **his dynamic advantage should acquire the form of one of the static elements.**

### U. Andersson – A. Adorjan

Szirak (Interzonal Tournament) 1987

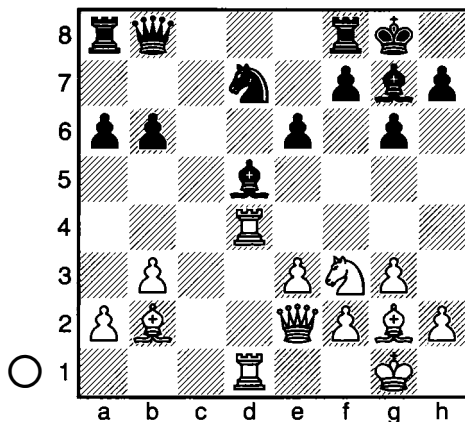
(D)

Thus he should try for an initiative after:

17. e4! ♖xd4  
18. ♗xd4?

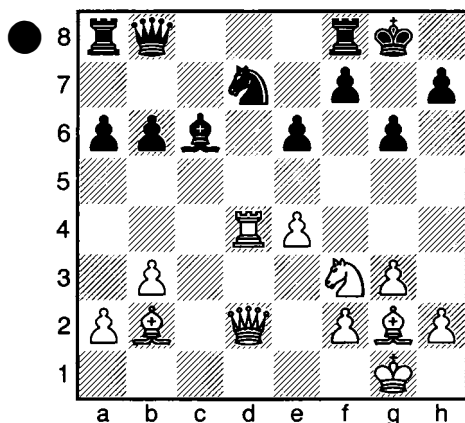
The other capture 18. ♘xd4! was rejected because of 18... e5 (after 18... ♖b7 19. ♘e6 fxe6 20. ♗xd7 ♗f7 21. ♗xf7 ♖xf7 22. ♗f3+ ♖e8 23. ♗f6 White wins), but it was there that White would have retained all the advantages of his position with 19. exd5!

(19. ♘f5 ♖e6, on the other hand, would not have brought any particular dividends) 19... exd4 20. d6! ♗a7 21. ♗xd4 ♗e8 22. ♗d2. The obvious but superficial move by the Swedish grandmaster loses the advantage and after correct play by Black it would have led to equality.



Position before 17.e4!

18. ... ♖c6  
19. ♗d2



White intensifies the pressure on the d-file and at the same time prepares the threat of 20. ♗h6.

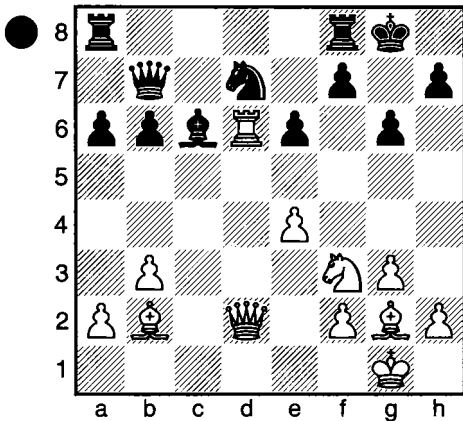
19. ... ♗b7

19... ♗d8 would have led to immense complications:

A) 20. ♖h6 e5 21. ♘g5 (but not 21. ♗xd7 ♗xd7 22. ♙xe5 ♗d1+ 23. ♙f1 ♖f8 when Black wins) 21... ♘f6 22. ♗xd8+ ♖xd8 23. ♙xe5 ♗d1+ 24. ♙f1 ♙b5;

B) 20. ♗d6 and here there is the fantastic reply 20... ♘f6!! 21. ♗xd8+ (21. ♖c3 loses to 21... ♗xd6 22. ♖xf6 e5) 21... ♗xd8 22. ♖c3 (22. ♗xd8+ ♗xd8 23. ♙xf6 ♗d1+ 24. ♙f1 ♙b5 is hopeless for White) 22... ♙b5 23. h3 ♘g7 24. a4 ♙e8 25. g4 ♗c8 26. ♖e3 (the transition into an ending after 26. ♖d4 ♖xd4 27. ♙xd4 h6 28. h4 g5 29. hxg5 hxg5 30. ♘g5 ♘g6 again leads to a difficult position for White) 26... h6 27. ♖f4 with a complicated game.

20. ♗d6



20. ... e5?

If 20... ♗ac8, then 21. ♖h6 f6 (21... e5? 22. ♘g5) 22. ♙h3 (22. ♘g5 ♘e5 23. ♙h3 also wins) 22... ♘c5 23. b4.

White appears to have achieved his goal, but the modest move 20... f6! may radically change the situation. Let us consider the resulting possibilities:

A) 21. ♘d4 ♙xe4 22. ♙xe4 (22. ♘e6 ♗f7 23. ♙xe4 ♖xe4 24. ♗xd7 ♖xe6) 22... ♖xe4 23. ♗xd7:

A1) 23... ♗ad8 24. ♘xe6 ♗xd7 25. ♖xd7 ♖e1+ 26. ♘g2 ♖e4+ 27. ♘f1 (27. f3 ♖c2+ with a draw) 27... ♖b1+ 28. ♙c1 ♖xc1+ 29. ♘g2 ♖h6 30. ♘xf8 ♖xf8 31. ♖e6+ ♖f7

32. ♖xb6 ♖d5+ 33. f3 ♖d2+ 34. ♖f2 with a decisive advantage for White;

A2) 23... ♗f7 24. ♗xf7 ♘xf7 25. ♖c3 ♘g8 and Black's defences hold;

B) 21. ♗xe6 ♙xe4 22. ♗e7 ♗f7 23. ♗xf7 ♘xf7 24. ♘g5+ fxg5 25. ♙xe4 ♖xe4 26. ♖xd7+ ♘f8 27. ♙g7+ ♘g8 28. ♙f6 with equality.

21. ♖c3 f6

21... ♗ac8 would have lost after 22. ♘xe5 ♘xe5 (22... ♙xe4 23. ♘c6 f6 24. ♙xe4) 23. ♖xe5 f6 24. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 25. ♖xf6.

- 22. ♖c4+ ♘g7
- 23. ♖xc6 ♖xc6
- 24. ♗xc6 ♗ac8
- 25. ♗d6 ♘c5
- 26. ♘e1! ♗fd8
- 27. ♗d5 a5
- 28. ♘f1 a4
- 29. b4 ♗xd5
- 30. exd5 ♘b7
- 31. ♘e2 ♘d6
- 32. ♘d1 ♘f7

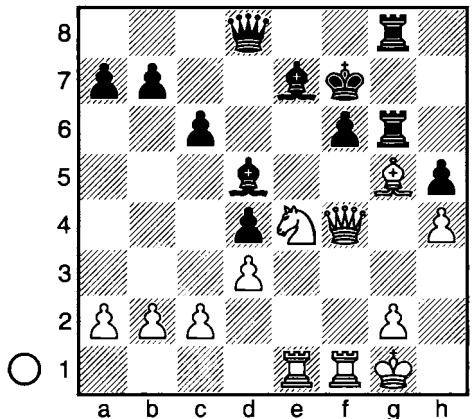
After 32... ♘c4 33. ♙c1 or 32... a3?! 33. ♙xa3 (33. ♙a1) 33... ♗a8 34. ♘c2 ♘b5 35. d6 ♗d8 36. ♙b2 ♗xd6+ 37. ♘c1 followed by 38. a4 there are no real chances of saving the game.

33. ♘c2 1-0

on move 42.

G.Kasparov – A.Roizman

Minsk 1978





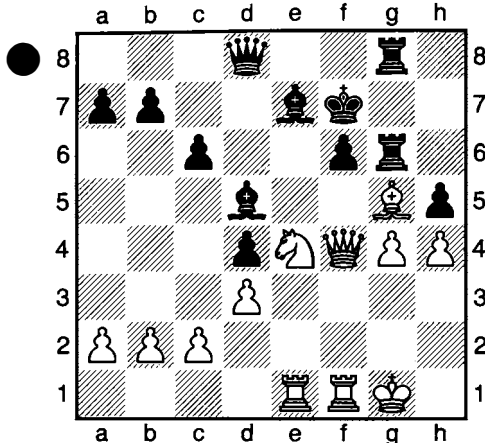
Let us study a critical position from the play of the young Kasparov.

**Static evaluation:**

1. = 2. ♣ 3. ♣ 4. =

Black is threatening 22...♔g7, when quite unexpectedly White's king will feel uncomfortable. Thus White must revert to dynamic play, and the future world champion rises to the occasion.

22. g4



I hope that this explosive move will no longer surprise the reader who is familiar with my proposed method of evaluating a critical position.

I should also mention that after 22.♘g3 ♔e8 23.♘f5 fxg5 White would have lost material without any visible compensation.

22. ... ♔g7

22...♖h8 would have set more complicated problems:

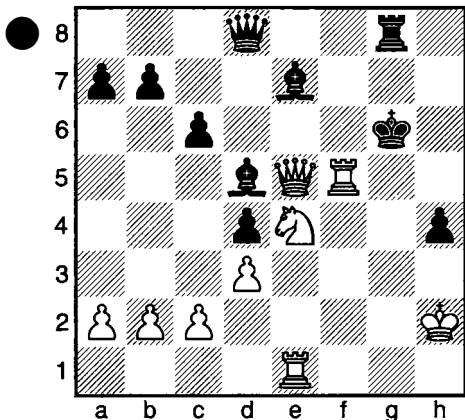
A) 23.♙xf6 ♙xf6 (Black obviously loses after 23...♖xg4+ 24.♗xg4 hxg4 25.♙xe7+ ♔xe7 26.♘c5+) 24.g5 (not 24.♘xf6 ♖xf6 25.♗xd4 hxg4) 24...♙e4 25.♗e4 ♔g7 26.♔h1 ♖f8 27.gxf6+ ♖xf6;

B) 23.gxh5! ♖xh5 24.♘g3 (White also wins by 24.♗g4 ♖h7 25.h5 ♖gg7 26.♘xf6 ♙xf6 27.♖xf6+ ♔g8 28.♖e5 or 27...♗xf6 28.♗d7+);

B1) 24...♙d6 25.♘xh5 (25.♗xf6+ ♖xf6 26.♘xh5 ♙h2+ 27.♔xh2 ♗b8+ 28.♘f4 with an unclear game) 25...♙xf4 26.♖xf4;

B2) 24...♖h7 25.h5 ♖g8 26.♔h2 ♖xh5+ 27.♘xh5 ♙d6 28.♖e5!. Everything rests on this winning reply.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 23. | gxh5 | fxg5 |
| 24. | ♗e5+ | ♔h6  |
| 25. | hxg6 | gxh4 |
| 26. | ♖f5  | ♔xg6 |
| 27. | ♔h2  |      |



Compare the positions of the kings in this diagram and the initial one. They are separated by only five moves, and this enables us to appreciate fully the grandiose scale of Kasparov's plan.

Black resigns.

We will study another instructive example concerning the static position of the king.

**M.Euwe – G.Maróczy**

Zandvoort 1936

In this critical position Black has to make up his mind regarding the exchange on e5.

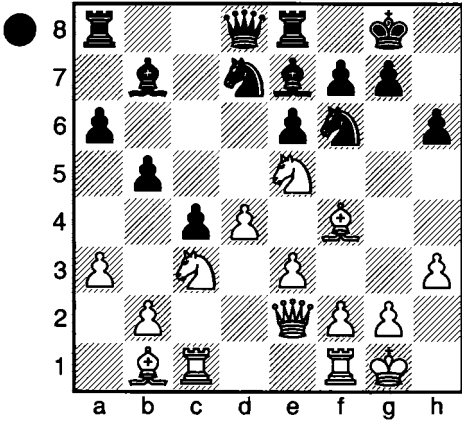
The **static evaluation** is favourable to Black:

1. = 2. = 3. ♣ 4. ±

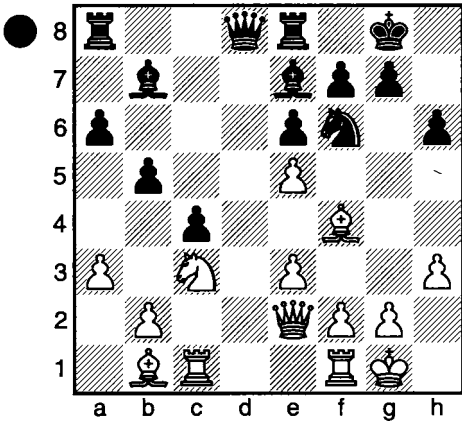
16...♘d5 maintains the present state of the position and prepares favourable simplification. The role of the queenside pawn majority increases as the endgame is approached. The static continuation 16...♘b6

can also be considered. Unexpectedly the Hungarian grandmaster chose the exchange

an enduring attack. The Dutch champion does not allow his opponent any chances.



16. ... ♖xe5?  
17. dxe5



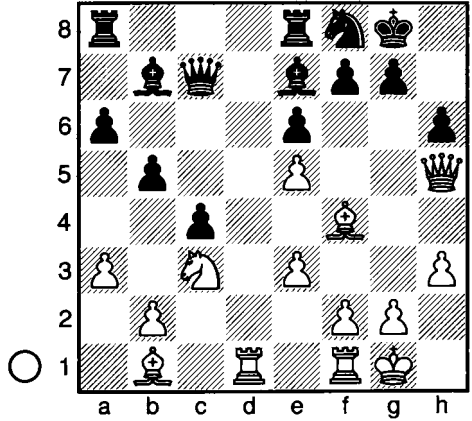
In order to record the changes that have taken place, we will give the static evaluation:

$$1. \pm 2. = 3. \mp 4. \mp$$

It is now in White's favour.

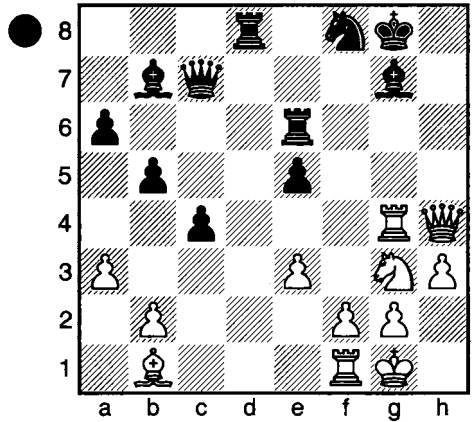
17. ... ♖h7  
18. ♗h5 ♖f8  
19. ♖cd1 ♗c7 (D)  
20. ♔xh6!

This sacrifice is the point of White's plan. For the bishop he acquires three pawns plus



Position after 19... ♗c7

20. ... gxf6  
21. ♖d4 ♔f5  
22. exf6 ♔xf6  
23. ♖g4+ ♔g7  
24. ♗xh6 ♖ad8  
25. ♖e2 e5  
26. ♖g3 ♖e6  
27. ♗h4



27. ... ♖d3  
Black avoids a trap: 27... ♗e7 28. ♖xg7+ ♗xg7 29. ♗xd8.

28. ♖f5 ♖g6  
29. ♗h5 ♗f7

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 30. | h4   | ♙f8  |
| 31. | ♖h6+ | ♙xh6 |
| 32. | ♚xh6 | ♚h7  |
| 33. | ♚g5  | ♙f7  |
| 34. | ♙xd3 | cxd3 |
| 35. | ♚f5+ |      |

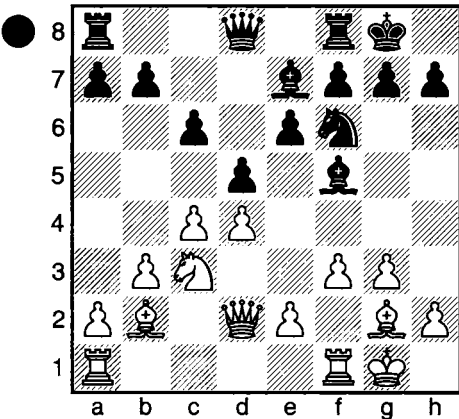
With the fall of the d3 pawn White now also has a material advantage.

1-0

### A.Stefanova – I.Dorfman

Valle d'Aosta Open 2000

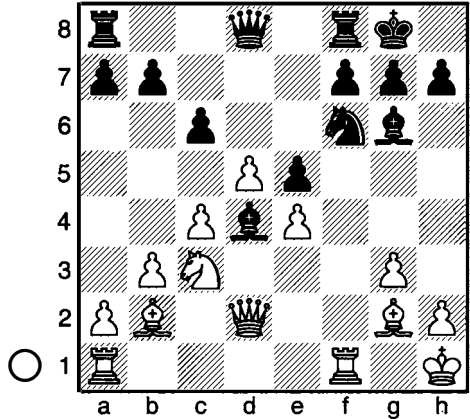
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | d4   | d5   |
| 2.  | ♘f3  | c6   |
| 3.  | g3   | ♙f5  |
| 4.  | ♙g2  | ♙f6  |
| 5.  | 0-0  | e6   |
| 6.  | b3   | ♘bd7 |
| 7.  | c4   | ♙e7  |
| 8.  | ♙b2  | 0-0  |
| 9.  | ♘c3  | ♘e4  |
| 10. | ♘d2  | ♘xd2 |
| 11. | ♚xd2 | ♘f6  |
| 12. | f3   |      |



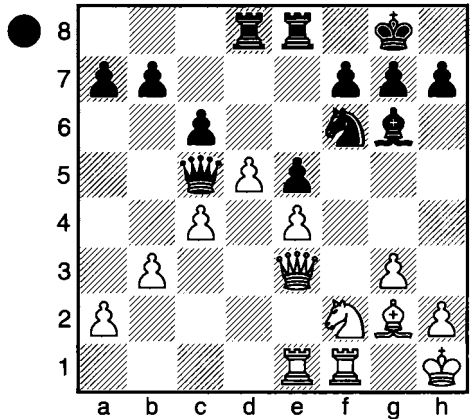
White has played the opening passively and he now wants to activate his bishops. In the process, however, his king becomes statically weak.

- |     |       |       |
|-----|-------|-------|
| 12. | ...   | ♙g6   |
| 13. | e4    | dx e4 |
| 14. | fx e4 | e5    |

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 15. | d5  | ♙c5+ |
| 16. | ♙h1 | ♙d4  |



- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 21. | ♘f2 | ♚c5 |
| 22. | ♚e3 |     |



A critical point. Black avoids the exchange of queens for two reasons: White's king is weak and he also has a protected passed pawn.

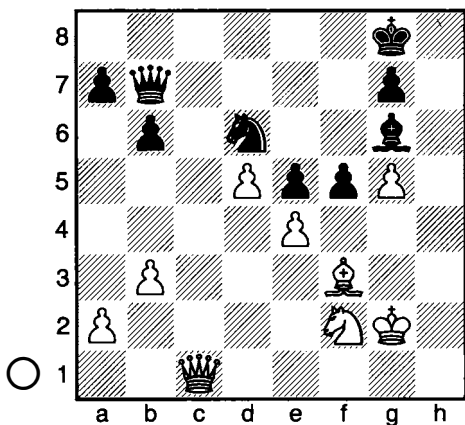
- |     |       |       |
|-----|-------|-------|
| 22. | ...   | ♚a3   |
| 23. | ♙e2   | b6    |
| 24. | ♙d2   | cx d5 |
| 25. | cx d5 | ♙c8   |
| 26. | ♙fd1  | ♙c1   |
| 27. | ♚e2   | ♙ec8  |
| 28. | ♙f3   | ♘e8   |

Black's plan finally takes shape. His knight will blockade the passed pawn and support f7-f5.

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 29. | ♖xc1 | ♗xc1+ |
| 30. | ♖d1  | ♗c5   |
| 31. | ♘d3  | ♗e7   |
| 32. | ♗b2  | f6    |
| 33. | ♖c1  | ♖xc1+ |
| 34. | ♗xc1 | ♘d6   |
| 35. | ♘f2  | ♗b7   |

In a severe time scramble Black marks time. He should have broken through with the f-pawn, exposing the opponent's king.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 36. | ♔g2  | ♔f8  |
| 37. | h4   | h6   |
| 38. | g4   | ♔g8  |
| 39. | g5   | hxg5 |
| 40. | hxg5 | f5   |



With only a few seconds on his clock, White makes a nervy move and allows his king to be exposed.

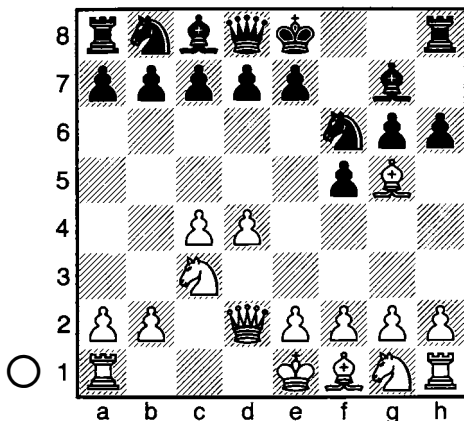
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 41. | exf5 | ♔xf5 |
| 42. | ♗c6  | ♗e7  |
| 43. | ♔f1  | e4   |
| 44. | ♔g4  | ♔xg4 |
| 45. | ♘xg4 | ♗xg5 |

Here calculation showed that there was no way for White to save the game.

- |     |      |      |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|-----|------|------|
| 46. | ♗xd6 | ♗xg4 | 47. | ♗b8+ | ♔h7  |
| 48. | ♗h2+ | ♔g6  | 49. | ♗d6+ | ♔h5  |
| 50. | ♗e5+ | ♔h4  | 51. | d6   | ♗d1+ |
| 52. | ♔f2  | ♗d2+ | 53. | ♔g1  | e3   |
| 54. | ♗f4+ |      |     |      |      |

- |     |      |      |     |      |      |     |     |      |     |
|-----|------|------|-----|------|------|-----|-----|------|-----|
| ♔h5 | 55.  | ♗f5+ | ♔h6 | 56.  | ♗f4+ | g5  | 57. | ♗f8+ | ♔h5 |
| 58. | ♗e8+ | ♔h4  | 59. | ♗e4+ | ♔h3  | 0-1 |     |      |     |

**J.Talamon - A.Faboul**  
France 1998



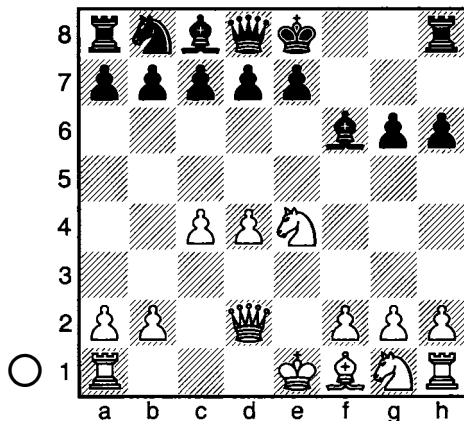
This position was reached in a game between two little-known French players after the opening moves

- |    |     |    |    |    |     |    |     |    |    |     |     |
|----|-----|----|----|----|-----|----|-----|----|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | d4  | f5 | 2. | c4 | ♘f6 | 3. | ♘c3 | g6 | 4. | ♔g5 | ♔g7 |
| 5. | ♗d2 | h6 |    |    |     |    |     |    |    |     |     |

It has to be decided under what circumstances it is more advantageous to carry out the exchange of bishop for knight.

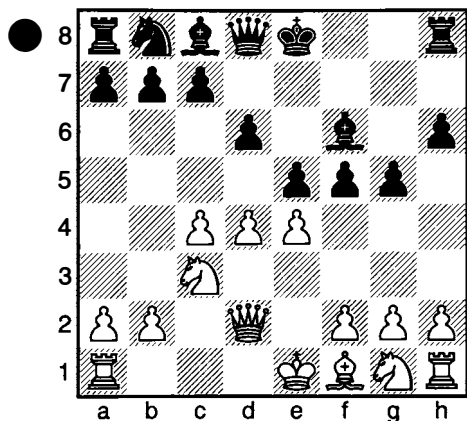
Let us compare the static evaluation in two possible branches:

- |    |    |      |      |    |    |      |         |    |      |      |    |      |    |      |
|----|----|------|------|----|----|------|---------|----|------|------|----|------|----|------|
| A) | 6. | ♔xf6 | ♔xf6 | 7. | e4 | fxe4 | (7...d6 | 8. | exf5 | ♔xf5 | 9. | ♔d3) | 8. | ♘xe4 |
|----|----|------|------|----|----|------|---------|----|------|------|----|------|----|------|



and

B) 6. ♖f4 g5 7. ♖e5 d6 8. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 9. e4 e5.



Let us compile the static evaluation in both cases:

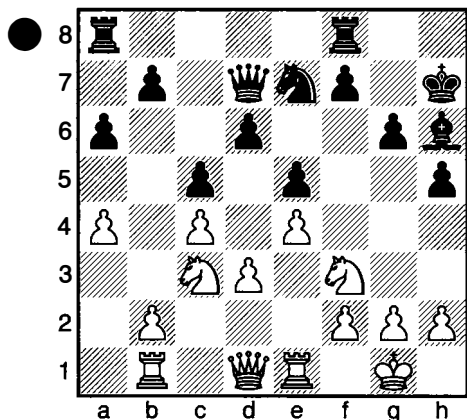
A. 1. ± 2. ♖ 3. ♖ 4. ±

B. 1. ± 2. ♖ 3. ♖ 4. ♖

It is quite obvious that in the first of these continuations White's chances are the more promising.

### L.Aronin – R.Kholmov

30th USSR Championship, Yerevan 1962



I find this example very instructive and relatively complicated.

Here each of the players possesses definite trumps. There is no doubt that only the white king is liable to be attacked. On the other hand, the material balance is favourable to White: the probability of the queen + knight tandem arising is quite considerable. Also, Black must seriously reckon with White's threat to seize the initiative by b2-b4.

#### The static evaluation

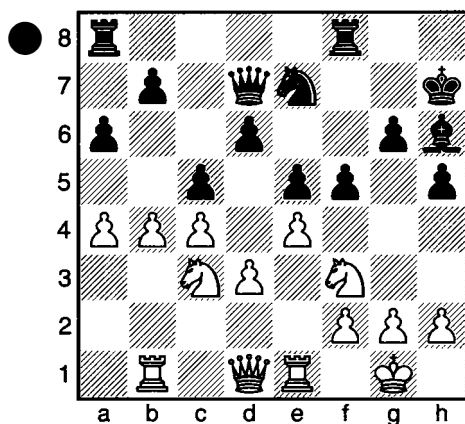
1. ♖ 2. ± 3. = 4. ±

makes the two sides' plans completely clear.

Thus Black should play **statically, in order to maintain the advantageous character of the play.** This is why the Russian grandmaster chose

19. ... a5!

In the event of the dynamic 19...f5? 20.b4



the potential weakness of the white king is of no great importance.

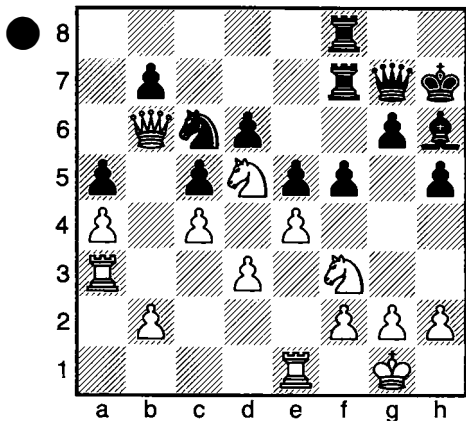
Also bad is 19...♗c6 20.♗d5 ♖d8 21.b4, not preventing the development of White's game.

20. ♖b3

After 20.♗d5 ♗xd5 21.cxd5 f5 22.♗d2 ♖xd2 23.♖xd2 f4 Black is assured of an attack on the king.

20. ... f5  
21. ♖b5 ♗c6  
22. ♗d5 ♖g7  
23. ♖b6 ♖f7

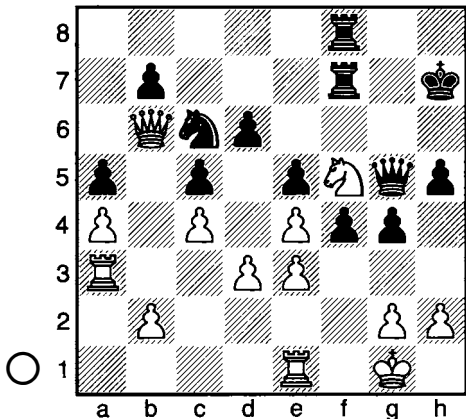
24. ♖a1 ♘af8  
25. ♖a3



25. ... g5

Black considered that his position was strong enough to aim for a forced win.

26. ♖e3 g4  
27. ♖h4 ♗xe3  
28. fxe3 f4  
29. ♖f5 ♖g5



30. exf4

Desperation. White also cannot save his king after 30. ♖xd6 fxe3 31. ♖xf7 ♖xf7 32. ♖aa1 ♖d4.

30. ... exf4  
31. ♖f1 f3  
32. g3 ♖xf5

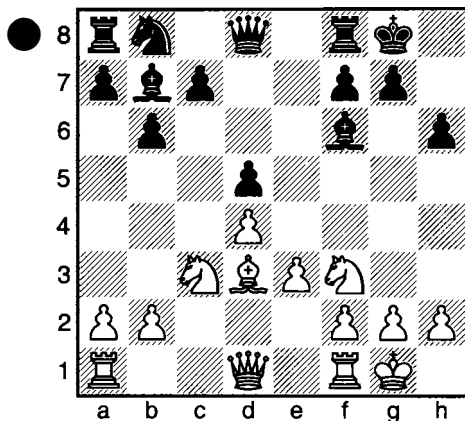
33. exf5 ♖d2

White has no defence. If 34. ♖f2, then 34... ♖d1+ 35. ♖f1 f2+ 36. ♖xf2 ♖xf5+ is decisive.

0-1

The following diagram shows a well-known theoretical position. It is a critical one, since the fate of the central pawn structure is about to be decided. Black has to make up his mind regarding c7-c5.

L. Polugayevsky – A. Saidy  
Tallinn 1973



The static evaluation

1. ± 2. ∓ 3. ∓ 4. ±

reflects the fragile position of the black king.

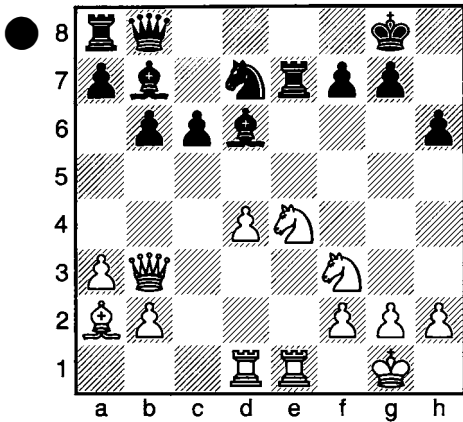
White is threatening to fix the pawn structure by 12. ♖b3. The **dynamic variation** 11...c5 12.dxc5 (in the recent game **Komarov-Dorfman, Saint Raphaël 1998**, Black achieved an acceptable position after 12. ♖c1 ♖d7 13. ♗f5 g6 14. ♗xd7 cxd4 15. ♖xd4 ♖xd7 16. ♖d3 ♖ac8 17. ♖fd1 ♖fd8) 12...bxc5 13. ♖b3 ♗c6 14. ♗b5 d4 15.exd4 cxd4 16. ♗xc6 ♖xc6 leads to equality. But in the game the American player preferred a natural developing move and his position deteriorated without any obvious reason.

11. ... ♖d7?

12. ♖b3 c6  
13. ♜ad1 ♞e8

After 13...♞e7 White gains the initiative with the typical manoeuvre 14.♘e5 ♘d6 15.f4.

14. ♘b1 ♖b8  
15. ♜fe1 ♘e7  
16. a3 ♘d6  
17. e4 dxe4  
18. ♘xe4 ♜e7  
19. ♘a2



19. ... ♖c7

Now, when all the white pieces are participating in the attack on the king, the existence of a decisive combination is easily explained.

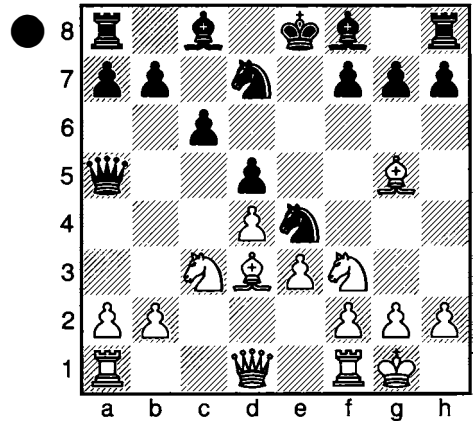
20. ♘eg5 ♘f6  
21. ♜xe7 ♖xe7  
22. ♖xf7+ ♔h8  
23. ♘e5 1-0

**L.Gofstein – M.Godena**  
Genova 1998

1. d4 d5  
2. c4 c6  
3. ♘f3 ♘f6  
4. ♘c3 e6  
5. ♘g5 ♘bd7  
6. cxd5 exd5  
7. e3 ♖a5

The favourite manoeuvre of the Italian player in this position. Despite its static attraction (White is forced to make certain concessions), in my view Black should aim for equality in the traditional lines of the Carlsbad Variation.

8. ♘d3 ♘e4  
9. 0-0



From the very first moves White pins his hopes on dynamic play. He gives up a pawn or parts with the bishop pair, for the sake of rapid development.

9. ... ♘xg5

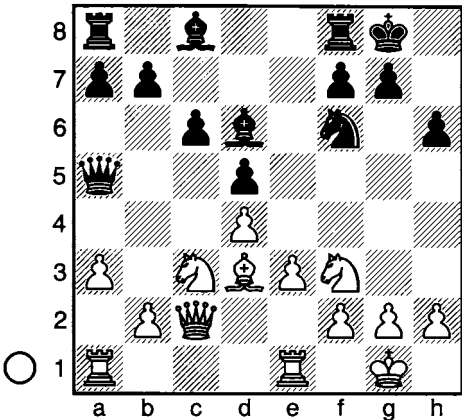
As is apparent from the variation 9...♘xc3 10.♖d2 f6 11.♘h4 g5 12.♘g3 g4 (12...♘b4 13.a3 ♘e4 14.♖xb4±) 13.♘h4 ♘b4 14.a3 ♘e4 15.♖xb4 it is not possible to win a pawn.

10. ♘xg5 ♘f6  
11. ♜e1 h6

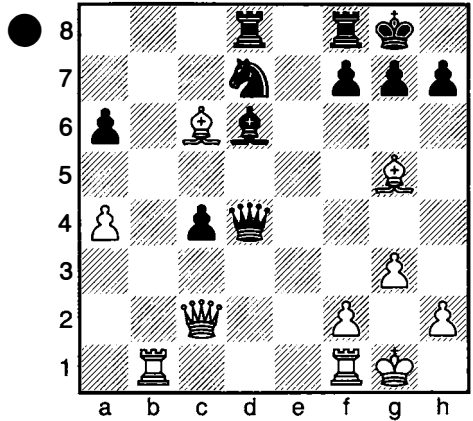
A critical position. **Black changes the static evaluation, by weakening the position of his king.** In any case the white knight goes to e5, but after the text move it will become untouchable there due to the weakening of the g6 square.

In the variation 11...♘d6 12.e4 dxe4 13.♘cxe4 White advantageously opens the position, but perhaps Black should have aimed for complications with 11...♘e7 12.♖c2 g6 13.f4 0-0 14.♘f3 (14.f5 ♘g7 15.♘f3 ♘d6) 14...♘g7 15.♘e5.

- 12. ♖f3      ♔b4
- 13. ♜c2      0-0
- 14. a3      ♔d6



**B.Ivanovic – A.Khalifman**  
Plovdiv 1986



It has long been known that chess is the tragedy of one tempo. Had Black succeeded in defending the e5 square, his position would have been acceptable.

- 15. ♘e5      ♔e6

Black accepts his fate, since after 15...♔e5 16.dxe5 ♘g4 17.f4 ♘xe3 18.♞xe3 d4 19.b4! ♜d8 (or 19...♜c7 20.♘d5 ♜d8 21.♘f6+ gxf6 22.♞g3+ ♖h8 23.♜e2 and wins) 20.♞d1 his problems would have become insoluble.

- 16. f4      ♞fc8
- 17. h3      c5
- 18. ♜f2      ♜d8
- 19. ♖h1      ♞ab8
- 20. ♜f3      cxd4
- 21. exd4      ♜b6
- 22. f5      ♔d7
- 23. ♘xd5      ♘xd5
- 24. ♘xd7      1-0

on move 29.

In the following game the Russian grandmaster carried out a rare idea.

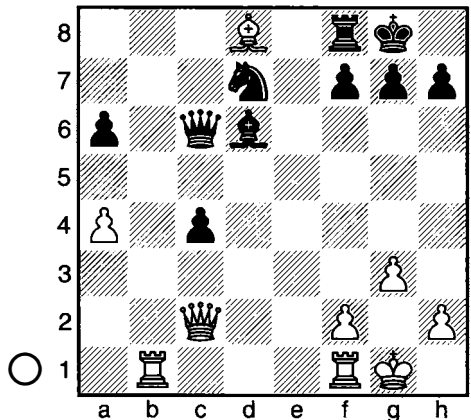
White has harmoniously deployed his forces. He regains the pawn in the two short variations 20...f6 21.♞fd1 ♜c5 22.♔d5+ ♖h8 23.♔e3 ♜a5 24.♔xc4 and 20...♘f6 21.♞fd1 ♜e5 (21...♜c5 22.♔xf6 gxf6 23.♔e4 h6 24.♞d5) 22.♔f4 ♜c5 23.♔xd6 ♞xd6 24.♞xd6 ♜xd6 25.♜xc4.

It is also hard to predicate a catastrophe on the basis of the static evaluation:

$$1. = 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

The situation demands **dynamic action** by Khalifman. He was able to exploit the tactical features of the position.

- 20. ...      ♜c5!
- 21. ♔xd8      ♜xc6



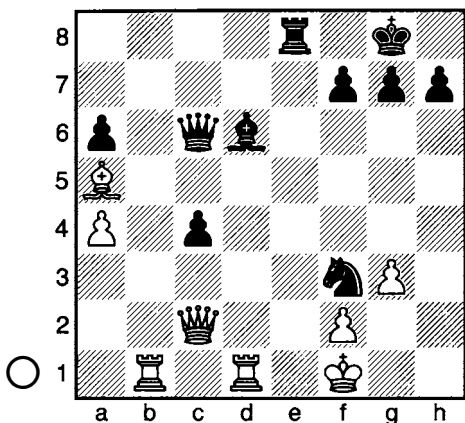


The static evaluation has changed significantly:

$$1. \mp 2. \pm 3. \pm 4. =$$

It is now Black who has a static advantage, and his subsequent play merely emphasises its character.

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 22. | ♙a5  | ♘e5   |
| 23. | ♚fd1 | ♘f3+  |
| 24. | ♙f1  | ♘xh2+ |
| 25. | ♙g1  | ♘f3+  |
| 26. | ♙f1  | ♘h2+  |
| 27. | ♙g1  | ♘f3+  |
| 28. | ♙f1  | ♚e8   |



- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 29. | ♚b6 | ♘d2+ |
| 30. | ♙g1 | ♘f3+ |
| 31. | ♙f1 |      |

White faces insuperable difficulties.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 31. | ...  | ♚c8  |
| 32. | ♙g2  | ♘h4+ |
| 33. | ♙h2  | ♘f3+ |
| 34. | ♙g2  | ♚a8  |
| 35. | ♙h3  | ♙c7  |
| 36. | ♚xc4 | ♘g5+ |
| 37. | ♙h2  | ♚f3  |
- 0-1

### M.Gurevich – L.Alburt

New York 1989

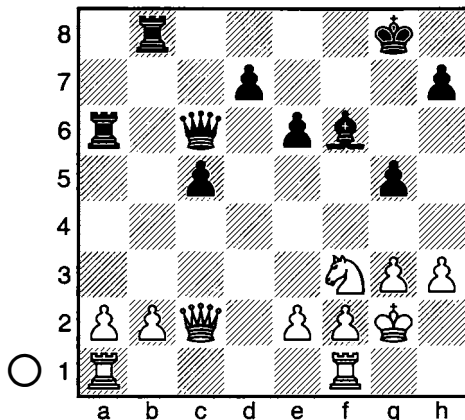
(D)

For the sacrificed pawn grandmaster Alburt has created strong pressure on the opponent's queenside. White is not able to retain

his material advantage, and the static evaluation is tending to favour Black:

$$1. = 2. = 3. \mp 4. \mp$$

To change the unfavourable tendency White needs dynamic measures.



- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 20. | b3!  | ♙xa1 |
| 21. | ♚xa1 |      |

To understand better and appreciate the change in the 'behaviour' of the players, let us compile the static evaluation of the new situation:

$$1. \pm 2. \mp 3. \mp 4. \pm$$

Thus it is now Black who is obliged to aim for dynamic play!

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 20. | ... | ♚d5! |
| 22. | e4  |      |

The careless 22.♚d1? ♚xa2! or 22.♙g1 ♚f5 could have cost White dearly.

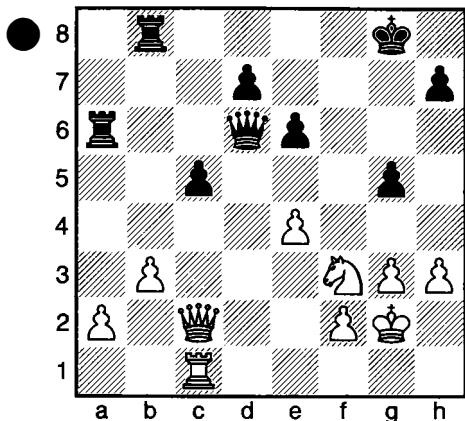
- |     |          |     |
|-----|----------|-----|
| 22. | ...      | ♚d6 |
| 23. | ♚c1! (D) |     |

Gurevich sticks firmly to a static course. After the naïve 23.♘g5? Alburt would have dispelled his opponent's illusions with the clever combination 23...♚e5 24.♚c1 ♚xb3!

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 23. | ... | ♚e7? |
|-----|-----|------|

**Black alternates static and dynamic moves, which is quite inadmissible in this type of situation.** He should have continued in the same dynamic way by 23...c4!

24. bxc4 (24. ♖xc4 ♜xa2 25. ♗xg5 ♕d2)  
24... ♜ba8, when he is out of danger.



Position after 23. ♜c1

24. ♕d2 h6  
25. h4 ♖d6!

Alburt makes use of a convenient moment to seek simplification. After 25...g4 26. ♗e5 ♖d6 27. ♖f4 White would have had a decisive initiative.

26. ♕e3 g4  
27. ♗h2 ♖d4  
28. ♖f4?

In time trouble the Belgian player loses the greater part of his advantage, which he could have retained by 28. ♕e2! ♜ba8:

A) 29. ♖xg4+ ♕g7 30. ♜xc5 ♜xa2 31. e5 ♜f8 (31... ♜a2a5 32. ♜c7 ♜5a7 33. ♜c4±)  
32. ♖xg7+ ♕xg7 33. ♗f3=±;  
B) 29. ♜d1 ♕g7 30. ♖xg4 ♜8a7 31. ♖f4 (31.a4 ♖xg4 32. ♗xg4 ♕g7 33. ♗e5±)  
31...e5 32. ♖f3 ♜xa2 33. ♗g4 ♜7a6  
34. ♖f5±.

28. ... ♜f8  
29. ♖xg4+ ♕h7  
30. ♕e2 ♜d6!

In a very complicated situation Alburt's play is exemplary. He constantly aims for the exchange of queens.

31. e5

In my view 31. ♗f1 was more accurate.

31. ... ♕d2

32. ♕e4+ ♕h8  
33. ♗f3 ♖d3  
34. ♖g4 ♜d5  
35. ♖h5 ♕g7?

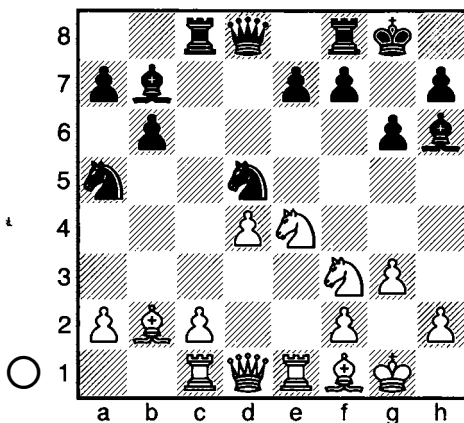
35... ♕h7 should have been played.

36. ♜c4 ♕h7  
37. ♗g5+ ♕g7  
38. ♗f3 ♕h7  
39. ♗g5+ ♕g7  
40. ♗f3

Gurevich repeats the position for the third time. After 40. ♗e4 I still prefer White.

40. ... ♕h7  
41. ♗g5+ ½-½

A. Konstantinopolsky –  
G. Levenfish  
Kuybyshev 1943



Black has an undisputed static advantage, which is confirmed by the static evaluation:

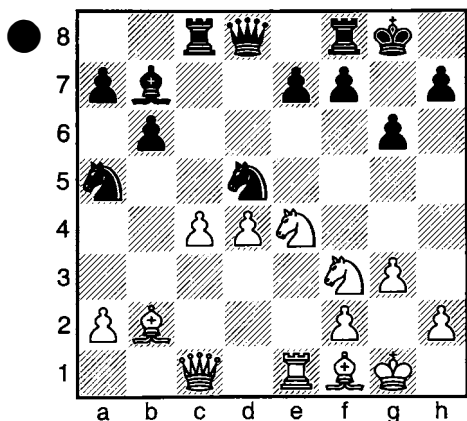
1. = 2. = 3. ≠ 4. ≠

White makes use of his only remaining dynamic option, in order to activate his dark-square bishop.

16. c4

Naturally, the sacrifice is forced, since 16. ♜b1 ♗c4 and 16. ♗fd2 f5 17. c4 fxe4 18. cxd5 ♜xc1 19. ♜xc1 e3 20. fxe3 ♖xd5 cannot satisfy White.

16. ... ♜xc1  
17. ♖xc1



The static evaluation has become more severe for Black:

1. ± 2. ̄ 3. ̄ 4. ̄  
17. ... ♔g7

More professional was the dynamic 17...f6  
18. ♖h6 ♘xc4 19. ♘fg5 fxg5 20. ♘xg5 ♖f7  
21. ♘xf7 ♖f8 22. ♖xf8+ ♗xf8 23. ♘d8  
♘xb2 24. ♘b7 ♖b8 25. ♗g2 ♖xb7  
26. ♗xd5 ♖d7 27. ♖e5 ♘d1 28. ♗g2 ♘c3  
29. ♗e6 ♖xd4.

On the other hand, after the static 17...♘f6  
18.d5 ♗xd5 19. ♖h6 ♗xe4 20. ♘g5 e5  
21. ♗xe5 ♖e8 22. ♗a1 (22. ♗xf6 ♖xf6  
23. ♘xe4 ♖g7) 22...♘xc4 23. ♖xe4 ♖xe4  
24. ♘xe4 ♘e8 25. ♘g5 ♖c7 (25...♘f6  
26. ♘xh7+—) 26. ♖xh7+ ♗f8 27. ♖h6+ ♗e7  
28. ♖h4 ♘cd6 29. ♘h7+ White's attack  
would have become irresistible.

18. ♘e5 ♘f6

If 18...f6, then 19. ♘g5! (after 19. ♘g4  
♗h8 there is no continuation of the attack)  
19...fxg5 (19...♘c7) 20. ♖xg5 ♘f6  
(20...♖f5) 21.d5 with some chances.

19. d5

The board is looking increasingly white. It  
is hard for Black to accept the appearance  
of the knight on g4, since this leads to in-  
soluble problems.

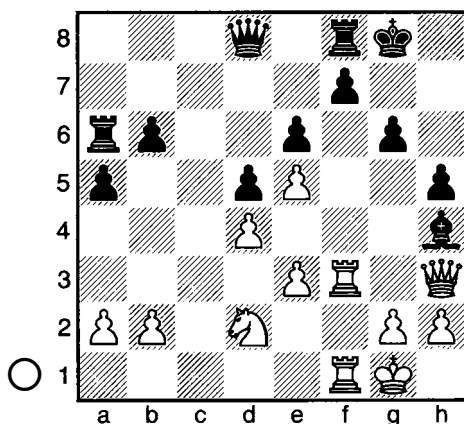
19. ... h5  
20. ♖f4 ♗h7

White is dominant and the existence of a  
winning combination here is quite under-  
standable.

21. ♘xf6+ exf6  
22. ♘d7 ♖xd7  
23. ♖xf6 ♖g8  
24. ♖e7

Black suffers serious loss of material.

A.Suetin – A.Butnoryus  
Riga 1968



This is one of those positions that inspires  
me in chess. My method enables the correct  
solution to be found.

In view of the weakness of the enemy king,  
the static evaluation is favourable to White:

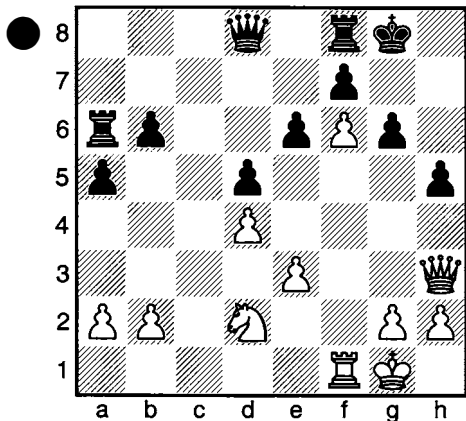
1. ± 2. = 3. ̄ 4. ̄

It follows that he should play statically.  
After studying the features of the position  
we come to the conclusion that the subtle  
manoeuvre 21. ♘b1 meets its demands,  
since the presence of White's knight on the  
kingside after ♘c3-e2-f4 will enable him to  
intensify the pressure against the castled  
position. But, contrary to common sense,  
the Russian grandmaster preferred a dy-  
namic continuation.

21. ♖f6?

White prefers a different route d2-f3-e5 for  
his knight. He thought it realistic to try and  
take advantage of his aggressive grouping  
on the kingside.

21. ... ♖xf6  
22. exf6



The end of the mini-phase obliges us, as usual, to draw up the static evaluation:

$$1. \pm 2. \mp 3. \mp 4. =$$

It is clear that Black must aim to play dynamically. His only try is 22...e5!! This multi-purpose move avoids a blockade and prepares simplification after 23...♖c8 followed by 24...♖g4. In the main variation 23.♖h4 exd4 24.♖g5 (after 24.g4 dxe3 25.gxh5 e2! Black wins) 24...b5! 25.e4! ♘h7 26.e5 ♖c8 (26...♖c6 27.♘f3 d3 28.♘h1 ♖c4 29.♖d2 ♖c2 30.♘g5+ ♘g8 31.♖xd3 ♖c8 32.e6 ♖c4 33.♖d1 ♖e2 is probably not forced, but it is very typical of the method of gaining counterplay) 27.♘f3 ♖g4 28.♖d2 h4 Black's strategy triumphs.

22. ... ♖h7  
23. ♖h4 ♖d6  
24. ♘f3

And after numerous mistakes by both sides, White won.

### E. Torre – A.Karpov

Bad Lauterberg 1977

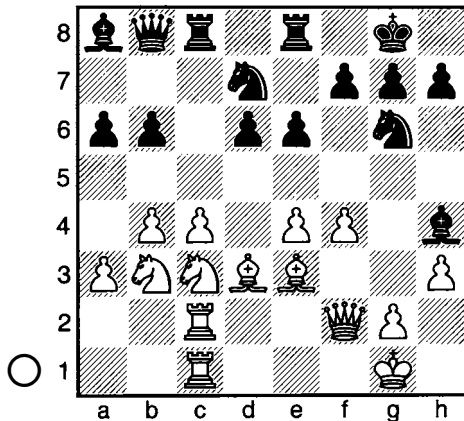
(D)

The Filipino player with White has a definite static advantage:

$$1. = 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

He can choose 21.♖d2, preparing the typical plan with a3-a4, ♖b1 and a4-a5. How-

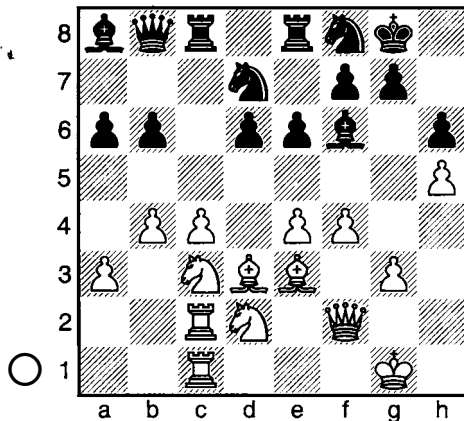
ever, contrary to the demands of the position, he preferred dynamic play.



21. g3

From now on the white king is irreparably weakened.

21. ... ♖d8  
22. ♘d2 ♖f6  
23. h4 h6  
24. h5 ♘gf8



Karpov's provocative strategy has proved highly successful. His position is firm and secure. The placing of the black pieces can be further strengthened by ♖c7 and ♖ec8, whereas the knight at d2 is forced to remain inactive in view of the idea of ♖xc3 and

♘f6. It is increasingly difficult for White to find any reasonable manoeuvres.

It has been said many times that Karpov often wins by standing on the back rank. It seems to me that the explanation is simple: he is one of the best static players.

25. g4

This despairing gesture hastens the inevitable.

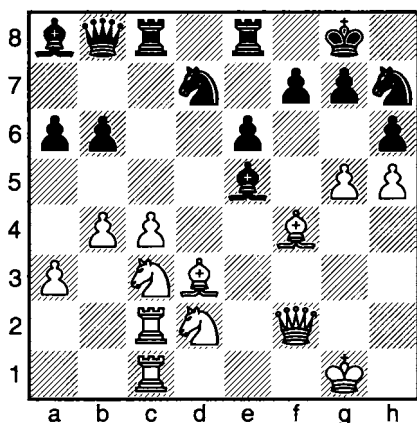
25. ... ♘h7

Black's strategic idea is to play e6-e5, when the advance of the white f-pawn concedes all the dark squares, and Black will take immediate advantage of this by the exchange ♗g5 followed by the occupation of f6 and g5. On the other hand, 26.♘f3 (after the incautious 26.♖g2 d5 27.cxd5 ♗xc3 28.♖xc3 ♖xc3 29.♖xc3 exd5 Black has the initiative) encounters the typical reply 26...♗xc3 27.♖xc3 ♘hf6.

26. e5 dxex5

27. g5 exf4

28. ♗xf4 ♗e5



The game is practically over. It is not easy, of course, to reconcile oneself to this sort of defeat, and it is probably for this reason that White prolongs his pointless resistance.

29. g6 fxg6

30. hxg6 ♗xf4

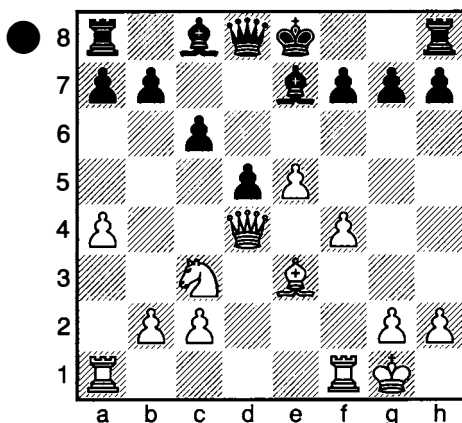
31. gxh7+ ♖h8

32. ♖f1 ♖f8

33. ♗e4 ♘e5  
34. ♖g2 ♘xc4  
0-1

V.Jansa – L.Kavalek

Harrachov 1963



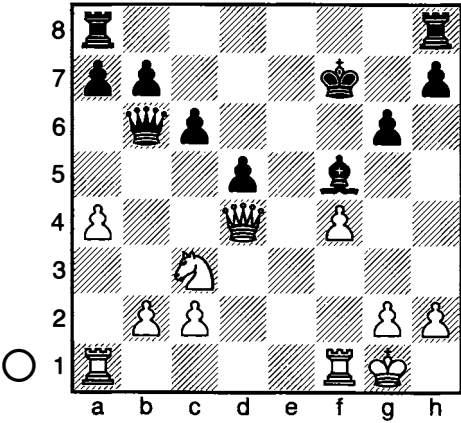
This is undoubtedly a critical position. White is threatening 16.f5. This pawn advance will significantly affect the static evaluation, which at the moment is advantageous to Black:

1. = 2. ♖ 3. ♖ 4. ♖

It will change the static position of the black king. To maintain the evaluation the possibilities 15...♗f5, 15...f5, 15...f6 and 15...g6 must be studied, and only two of these four (15...f6 and 15...g6) meet the demands of the position.

Thus the natural 15...♗f5 encounters the strong reply 16.g4! ♗xg4 17.f5 when White has the initiative for the pawn, while the game continuation 15...f5 16.a5 0-0 17.b4 ♗e6 18.♘a4 ♖f7 19.♖c3 ♖g8 20.♗c5 allows White to arrange play on the dark squares, aiming for the favourable queen + knight tandem.

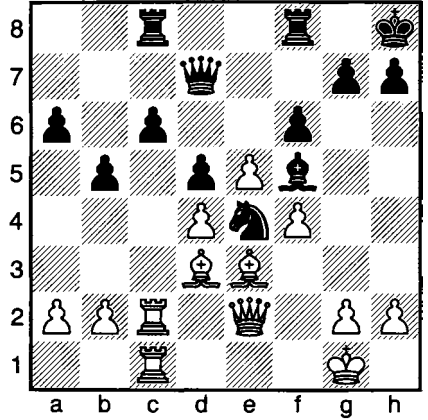
But after 15...f6 or 15...g6 16.e6 ♗f6 17.exf7+ ♖xf7 18.♖d2 ♗f5 19.♗d4 ♗xd4+ 20.♖xd4 ♖b6 (D) Black is able to retain all the advantages of his position.



- 17. ... ♖ad8
- 18. ♔e2 ♗h8
- 19. ♖ac1 c6
- 20. ♕d3 ♖c8
- 21. ♖c2 ♕f5
- 22. ♖fc1

In the following game I made use of a similar idea in a more complicated situation.

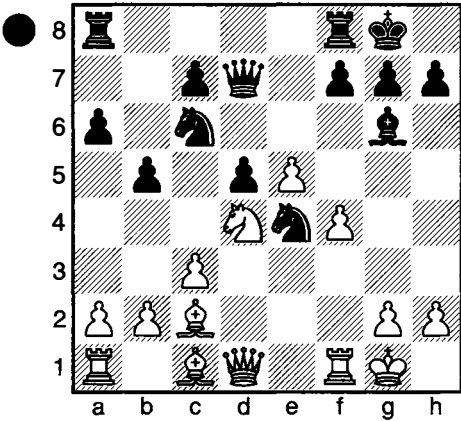
**J.Klovans – I.Dorfman**  
USSR 1981



Here the Latvian player offered a draw, since Black's position has become 'untouchable'.

The following example is typical of variations of the King's Indian Defence with ♗e3.

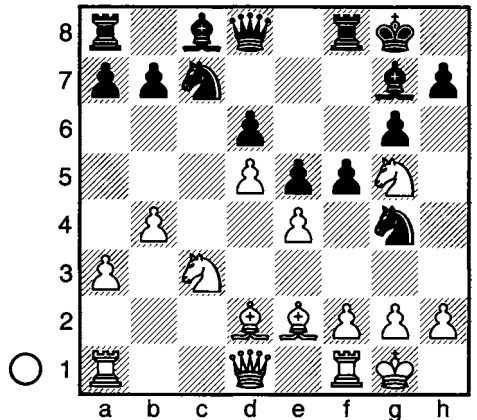
**A.Yusupov – V.Gavrikov**  
Yerevan (Zonal Tournament) 1982



Here Black has to solve an identical problem. White's bishops may begin operating at full power, if he is able to arrange play on the dark squares. Therefore Black's objective is a blockade on the squares of the opposite colour. After

- 15. ... ♖xd4
- 16. cxd4 f6
- 17. ♗e3

17.g4 can be parried by 17...f5.

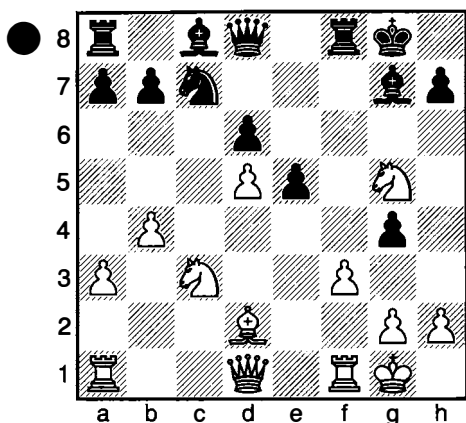


The static evaluation will stabilise as better for White

$$1. = 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

if he succeeds in halting the development of Black's initiative on the kingside. The Russian grandmaster found an elegant way of solving this problem:

16.  $\text{exf5}$                      $\text{gxf5}$   
 17.  $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xg4}$                  $\text{fxg4}$   
 18.  $\text{f3}$



The static evaluation has changed significantly:

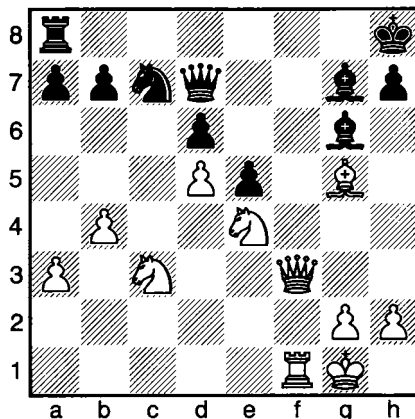
$$1. \pm 2. \mp 3. = 4. \pm$$

It is noteworthy that within a few moves Black's position became hopeless without him making any obvious mistake.

18. ...                         $\text{gxf3}$   
 19.  $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xf3}$                      $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{f5}$   
 20.  $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{e2}$                       $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{d7}$   
 21.  $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{f1}$                       $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{g6}$

I do not see any alternative to this manoeuvre: both 21... $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{g4}$  22. $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{e4}$  and 21...h6 22. $\text{\textcircled{d}}\text{ge4}$   $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{g4}$  23. $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xf8+}$   $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xf8}$  24. $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xf8+}$   $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{xf8}$  25. $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{f2+}$   $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{g8}$  26. $\text{\textcircled{d}}\text{f6+}$  are unsatisfactory for Black.

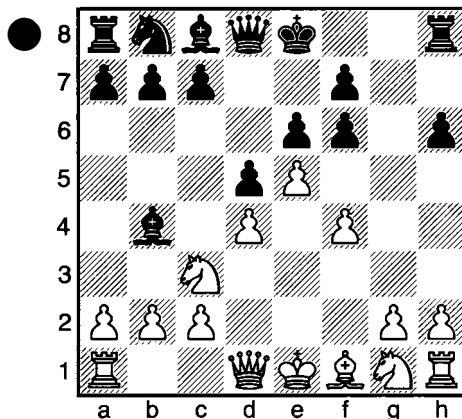
22.  $\text{\textcircled{d}}\text{ge4}$                      $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xf3}$   
 23.  $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{xf3}$                       $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{h8}$   
 24.  $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{g5}$



and Yusupov converted his advantage on the 42<sup>nd</sup> move. Here the attempt to ease the defence by simplification leads to disaster after 24... $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{f8}$  25. $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{xf8+}$   $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xf8}$  26. $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{xf8+}$   $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{g7}$  27. $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{g8+}$   $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{f7}$  28. $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d8}$   $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{g4}$  29.h3  $\text{\textcircled{c}}\text{h5}$  30. $\text{\textcircled{a}}\text{d7+}$ .

### A.Valchini – Y.Benitah

Lyon Championship 1996



In this position after just six moves Black has seized the initiative and White has no promising plan. Black only needs to maintain the static evaluation:

$$1. = 2. \mp 3. \mp 4. \mp$$

The variation 7... $\text{fxe5}$ ! 8. $\text{dxe5}$  c5 solves the problem completely. Black controls the

centre and consolidates the position of his king.

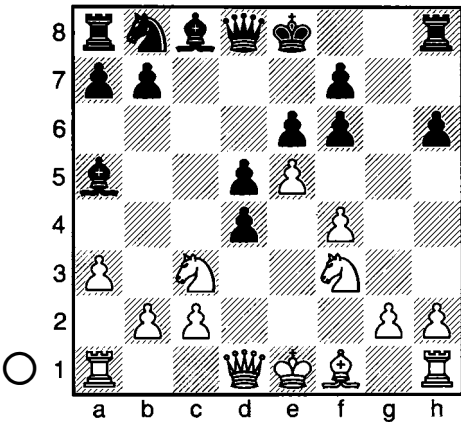
7. ... c5?!

The start of an unsuccessful plan. As a result of this inaccurate transposition of moves the black king remains in the centre and may come under attack.

8. a3 a5

9. f3 cxd4

9...c6 10. b5 cxd4 11. ♖xd4 transposes into a position from the note to White's 10<sup>th</sup> move.



10. ♖xd4?

White misses 10. ♖xd4! ♔d7 (10...c6 11. ♔b5) 11.0-0-0 ♖c6 12. ♖e3 with the possible branches:

A) 12...fxe5 13. ♖xe5 (13.fxe5 ♖b6 14. ♖d3) 13...d4 14. ♖xd4 ♔b6 15. ♖xc6 bxc6 16. ♖e4 (16. ♖a4 ♔xd4 17. ♖xd4 0-0 18. ♔d3);

B) 12...d4 13. ♖xd4 ♔b6 14. ♖cb5 (14. ♖e4!?, 14. ♖ce2? fxe5 15.fxe5 ♖c7).

These variations are convincing enough. But in the game after:

10. ... fxe5

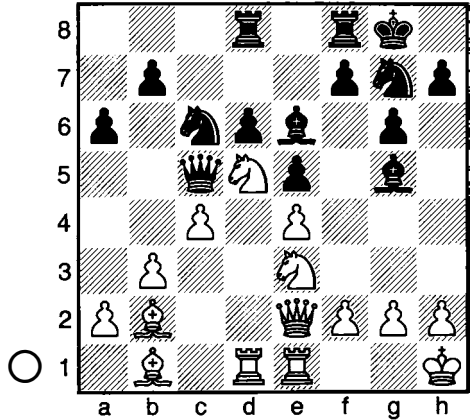
11. fxe5 ♖h4+

the white king did not survive for long.

It can happen that the technique for converting a particular idea may be more complicated than the evaluation of the position.

V.Anand – A.Shirov

Buenos Aires 1994



Here the static evaluation undoubtedly favours White:

1. = 2. = 3. ± 4. ±

21. ♖f3?

A conceptual mistake, rare for a player of this standard. From the result of the evaluation White should not allow his opponent to change the situation. For his advantage to become irreversible, White should **consolidate the position of his king**.

In the variation 21.g3! f5 (21...♔xe3 22. ♖f6+ ♖h8 23. ♖xe3) 22.f4 exf4 23.gxf4 ♔h4 24.exf5 ♖xf5 25. ♖xf5 ♔xf5 26. ♔xf5 ♖xf5 27. ♖e6+ ♖f8 (27...♖f7 28.f5) 28. ♔f6 ♔xf6 (28...♔xe1 29. ♔xd8 ♖f2 30. ♖xe1) 29. ♖xf6 ♖g7 30. ♖e8+ the Indian grand-master would have retained all the trumps of his position.

21. ... f5!

Black chooses a propitious moment to develop play against the opponent's king.

22. ♖g3

In the event of 22.exf5 ♔xe3! 23. ♖xe3 ♖xf5 White can no longer control the development of events.

22. ... ♔xe3

23. fxe3 ♖f7

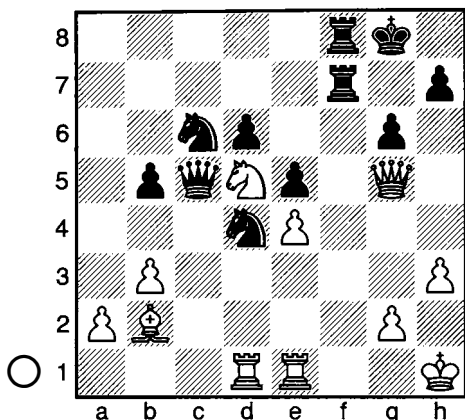
In order to use the f-file after ♖df8.

24. exf5 ♔xf5!



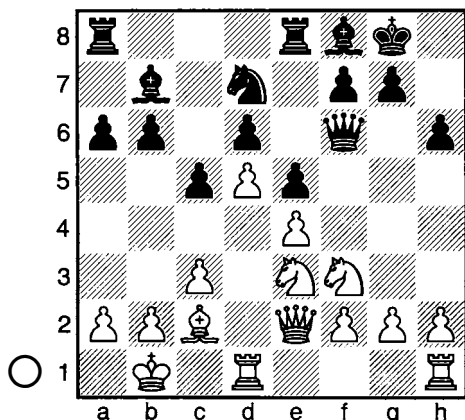
Well played! After the obvious, but bad 24...♘xf5? 25.♙xf5 ♘xf5 26.e4 ♙e6 27.♙c1 Anand would have avoided any weakening of his position.

25.	♙xf5	♘xf5
26.	♖g5	♗df8
27.	h3	b5
28.	e4	♘fd4
29.	cxb5	axb5



A complicated position has been reached, and the progress made by Black is obvious.

### V.Korchnoi – A.Karpov Hastings 1971



In the next position that the reader is invited to analyse Black has the bishop pair in a

stable position. This superiority is reflected in the static evaluation:

1. = 2. ♖ 3. ♖ 4. ♖

White cannot afford to be idle, since after b6-b5, c5-c4, ♘c5, a6-a5, ♙a6, ♗ec8 and b5-b4 his queenside will collapse like a house of cards. Korchnoi does not allow his judgement to be prejudiced.

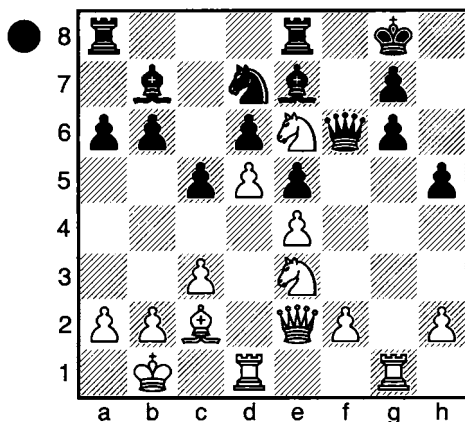
16. g4! ♗d8

Visually Black's position resembles a well-fortified citadel. But now, by means of a sacrifice, White reveals the true situation on the board.

17. g5 h5

With other defences too it is hard for Black to delay the development of the opponent's attack: 17...hxg5 18.♗dg1 ♙e7 (18...f6 19.h4 gxh4 20.♘xh4) 19.h4 gxh4 20.♘f5 g6 21.♘3xh4 ♙xh4 22.♖h5, or 17...g6 18.gxh6 ♙xh6 19.h4 ♙f4 20.h5.

18.	g6	fxg6
19.	♗hg1	♖f6
20.	♘g5	♙e7
21.	♘e6	



21. ... ♘f8

A critical moment. Black parts with material in order to avoid the direct attack after 21...♗ac8 22.♗g2 ♘f8 23.♗dg1 ♖h7 24.♗xg6 ♖xg6 25.♗xg6 ♖xg6 26.♙d1 ♖f7 27.♖f3+ ♙f6 28.♘xg7 ♖xg7 29.♘f5+ ♖h8 30.♘xd6.

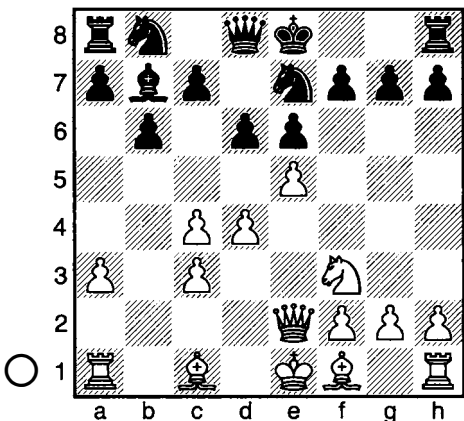
The remainder is a matter of technique, in this case not very difficult.

22. ♖c7 ♜f7 23. ♜df1 b5 24. ♗xa8 ♙xa8  
 25. c4 ♜b8 26. ♙d3 ♜e8 27. ♜c1 ♙f6  
 28. ♜g2 ♜b6 29. ♜cg1 ♜b8 30. ♜f1 b4  
 31. ♙e2 h4 32. ♜xg6 ♜xg6 33. ♜xg6 ♗xg6  
 34. ♙g4 ♗f4 35. ♜d1 b3 36. axb3 ♙b7  
 37. ♗g2 ♙c8 38. ♙xc8 ♜xc8 39. ♜g4 ♜e8  
 40. ♗f4 exf4 41. ♜xf4 ♙e5 42. ♜xh4 ♜f8  
 43. b4 ♙d4 44. bxc5 1-0

**L. Stein – V. Smyslov**  
 Moscow 1972

- |    |      |       |
|----|------|-------|
| 1. | c4   | ♗f6   |
| 2. | ♗c3  | e6    |
| 3. | ♗f3  | b6    |
| 4. | e4   | ♙b7   |
| 5. | ♜e2  | ♙b4   |
| 6. | e5   | ♗g8   |
| 7. | d4   | d6    |
| 8. | a3   | ♙xc3+ |
| 9. | bxc3 | ♗e7   |

In a well-known theoretical variation a critical position has been reached, one that is important for the fate of this continuation. If Black should succeed in fixing the pawn structure, the evaluation will become positive for him.



**10. h4!**

An excellent reply, aimed at raising the ‘fighting efficiency’ of the bishops. White

logically seeks to develop his initiative on the dark squares, weakened by the early exchange on c3.

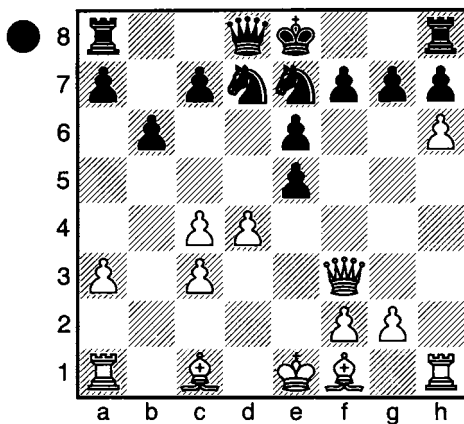
10. ... ♗d7  
 11. h5 ♙xf3

After 11...dxe5 12. ♗xe5 ♗xe5 13. ♜xe5 Black is unable to parry the threat of 14. h6.

12. ♜xf3 dxe5

After 12...h6 13. ♜g4 ♗f5 14. ♙d3 or 13. exd6 cxd6 14. ♙d3 ♗f6 15. g4 the white bishops are dominant.

13. h6



13. ... gxf6

The former world champion prefers to take his chance in a complicated position, rather than try and resist without any prospects after 13...g6 14. dxe5 0-0 15. ♙g5 ♗xe5 16. ♜f6 ♗f5 17. ♜xd8 ♜axd8 18. ♙xd8 ♜xd8 19. ♜d1.

14. ♙xh6 exd4  
 15. ♙g7 ♜g8  
 16. ♜xh7 ♗f5  
 17. ♙xd4 c5  
 18. g4

It is this energetic move, conclusively opening the position, that constitutes the point of Stein’s idea.

18. ... cxd4  
 19. gxf5 e5  
 20. ♜d5 ♜f8  
 21. cxd4 ♜c8  
 22. ♜d1

Another precise reply, since after the naïve 22.dxe5 Black has the active possibility 22...♖c5.

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 22. | ...  | ♖e7   |
| 23. | ♙g2  | ♖g8   |
| 24. | ♜b7  | ♖xc4  |
| 25. | dxe5 | ♜xe5+ |
| 26. | ♙f1  | ♜b5   |
| 27. | ♙g1  | ♜c6   |

This loses a piece, but 27...♖cg4 would have left Black without any hopes of a successful defence after 28.♜c8+ ♙e7 29.♖xd7+ ♜xd7 30.♖xf7+ ♙xf7 31.♜xd7+ ♙f8 32.f6 ♖xg2+ 33.♙f1 ♖g1+ 34.♙e2.

28. ♜xc6

28.♖h8! was even stronger than on the next move.

- |     |       |      |
|-----|-------|------|
| 28. | ...   | ♖xc6 |
| 29. | ♖h8!  | ♖cg6 |
| 30. | fxg6  | ♖xh8 |
| 31. | ♙c6   | ♖g8  |
| 32. | ♙xd7+ | ♙e7  |
| 33. | ♙f5   | fxg6 |
| 34. | ♖d7+  | ♙f6  |
| 35. | ♙d3   | ♖a8  |
- 1-0

## V.Korchnoi – L.Szabo

Bucarest 1954

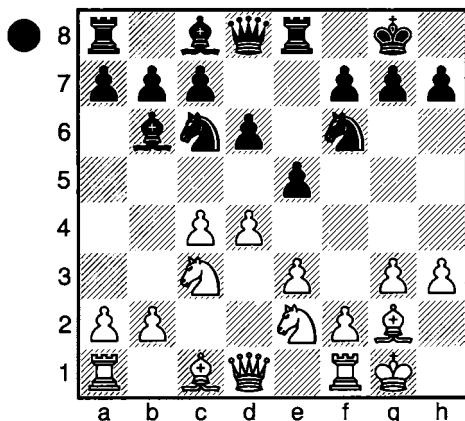
- |    |        |     |
|----|--------|-----|
| 1. | c4     | e5  |
| 2. | ♘c3    | ♘f6 |
| 3. | g3     | ♙c5 |
| 4. | ♙g2    | 0-0 |
| 5. | e3     | ♖e8 |
| 6. | ♘ge2   | ♘c6 |
| 7. | 0-0    | d6  |
| 8. | d4     | ♙b6 |
| 9. | h3 (D) |     |

At first sight Black is well developed and his position is solid. A critical moment in the game has arrived, since the central pawns have come into play.

9. ... ♙f5?

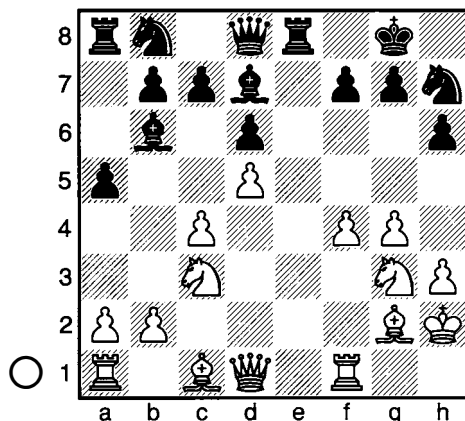
This move must be unreservedly condemned, since from now on the black king is statically weak. After the timely opening of the centre by 9...exd4 10.exd4 h6!

(10...♙f5 11.g4 ♙g6 12.♙g5; 10...♘e7 11.♙g5) the further development of White's play on the kingside involves a serious risk. Thus, for example, the attacking attempt 11.g4 is met by 11...h5 12.g5 (12.f3 hxg4 13.fxg4 ♘xg4 14.hxg4 ♙xg4) 12...♘h7 13.h4 ♘f8.



Position after 9.h3

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 10. | d5   | ♘b8  |
| 11. | g4   | ♙d7  |
| 12. | ♘g3  | h6   |
| 13. | ♙h2  | a5   |
| 14. | f4   | exf4 |
| 15. | exf4 | ♘h7  |



16. g5!

Energetic play by Korchnoi.

16. ... ♖a6

If 16...hxg5 17.fxg5 ♘xc5 18.♚h5! f6 19. ♙xg5 fxg5 20. ♚f7+ ♗h8 21. ♙e4! and White wins.

17. gxh6

Stronger was 17.♚h5 g6 18. ♚xh6 ♚e7 19. ♘ce4 ♚f8 20.♚h4 ♚g7 21.f5 ♘c5 22.fxg6 fxg6 (22...♚xg6 23. ♘xc5 ♙xc5 24. ♙e4 ♚xe4 25.♚xe4) 23.♘f6+ ♘xf6 (23...♗h8 24. ♙d2) 24.gxf6 ♚f7 25.♙h6+.

17. ... ♚h4

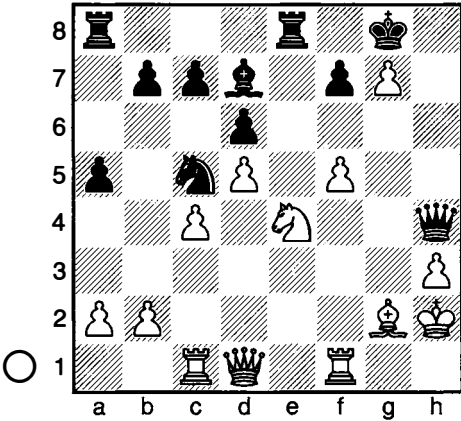
18. hxg7 ♘f6

19. f5 ♙e3

20. ♘ce4 ♘xe4

21. ♘xe4 ♙xc1

22. ♚xc1 ♘c5



he missed 26...♘f6 27.g5 ♙xg7 28.gxf6+ ♙xf6 with good practical chances of saving the game. The move played was an inexplicable mistake, since it all ended after

26. ... ♘c5

27. f6 ♚e8

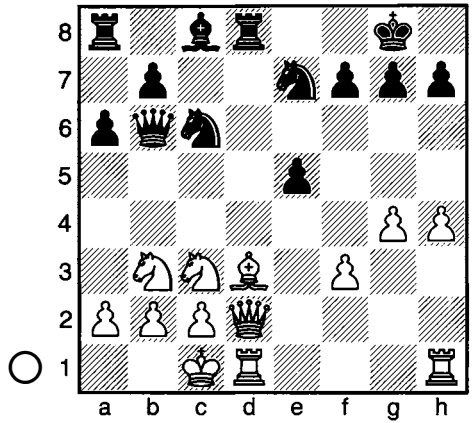
28. ♚xe8+ ♙xe8

29. ♚e1 ♙a4

30. ♚e3 1-0

A.Gipslis – J.Bielczyk

Riga 1981



At the end of a series of forced moves the game has reached a critical point. Which of the exchanges is correct? After 23.♘xc5 dxc5 24.♚g4 ♚xg4 25.hxg4 ♙xg7 26.♚xc1 ♙f6 27.♙g3 ♙g5 28.♙f3 ♚xe1 29.♚xe1 ♚e8 30.♚h1 Black has no defence.

23. ♚g4

Whereas now the Hungarian grandmaster had an excellent opportunity to make it harder for the opponent to convert his advantage. After:

23. ... ♚xe4

24. ♙xe4 ♚xg4

25. hxg4 ♘xe4

26. ♚xc1

Black's last move 15...e5 prepares harmonious development with ♙e6. Later he will be able to exploit the pluses of the static evaluation:

1. = 2. = 3. ♚ 4. ♚

Thus, the time has come for dynamic action. The Latvian grandmaster's reply is very timely and it sets the opponent insuperable problems.

16. h5!

Now the variations 16...♙e6 17.h6 g6 18.♚g5, 16...h6 17.g5 and 16...f6 17.h6 g6 18.♘e4 are completely hopeless for Black.

16. ... ♙h8

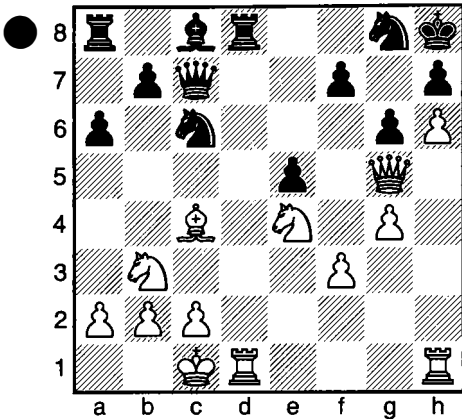
17. h6 g6

18. ♚g5

In the changed conditions the first element of the descending scale has become positive for White. From now on the main forces of

the opponent's army should be switched to the defence of their monarch.

18. ... ♖g8  
 19. ♖e4 ♔c7  
 20. ♙c4



The white pieces have occupied the dominating heights and Black is forced to weaken his position still further, to try and complete his development.

20. ... b5  
 21. ♖xd8 ♖xd8  
 22. ♙d5 ♙b7

In the event of 22...♖e6 23.♗e3 White retains dangerous threats: 23...♖b8 24.♖bc5 ♖b6 (24...♖d8 25.f4) 25.♙xe6 ♙xe6 26.♖g5 ♙d5 27.♗d1 ♖e7 28.♖xf7+ (28.♖d7) 28...♙xf7 29.♗d7 ♖d5 30.♖xc7 ♖xe3 31.♖xf7+.

23. ♗d1 ♙xd5

23...♖c8 would have provoked the reply 24.♖bc5 ♖e6 25.♙xe6 ♙xe4 26.b4.

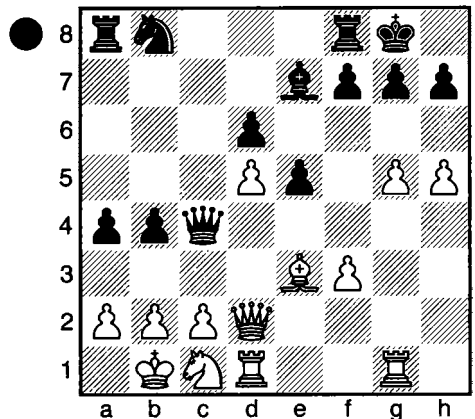
24. ♖xd5 ♖e6  
 25. ♗d2 ♖f4  
 26. ♗d7 ♗c4  
 27. g5!

Now Black's king and knight have been driven into the corner and are unable to take part in the play. The f7 pawn is hard to defend, both in the middlegame and in the endgame. White converted his advantage five moves later.

## O.De la Riva – J.Gallagher

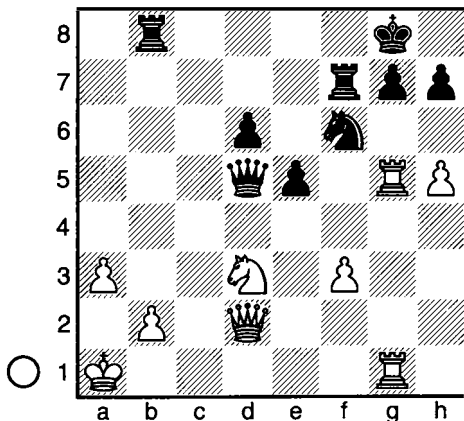
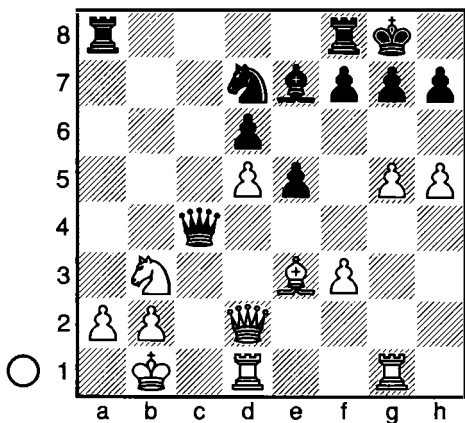
France 1998

1. e4 c5  
 2. ♖f3 d6  
 3. d4 cxd4  
 4. ♖xd4 ♖f6  
 5. ♖c3 a6  
 6. f3 e5  
 7. ♖b3 ♙e6  
 8. ♙e3 ♙e7  
 9. ♗d2 0-0  
 10. 0-0-0 b5  
 11. g4 b4  
 12. ♖d5 ♙xd5  
 13. exd5 a5  
 14. ♔b1 ♗c7  
 15. g5 ♖fd7  
 16. h4 ♖b6  
 17. h5 a4  
 18. ♖c1 ♖c4  
 19. ♙xc4 ♗xc4  
 20. ♖hg1



Black has not played the opening very well. In the event of g5-g6 his king will come under a strong attack. In addition the pawn formation is favourable for White, in view of the weakness of the c6 square and of the d6 pawn, fixed on a dark square. This is why the English grandmaster resorts to dynamic play.

20. ... b3  
 21. cxb3 axb3  
 22. ♖xb3 ♜d7



The critical moment of the game has been reached. It is important to note that the static evaluation has become positive for Black:

1. ♖f4 2. ♜± 3. ♜± 4. ♜±  
 23. ♜c1?

Confusion. It can sometimes be heard that chess is a scaled-down model of life and the laws that apply in it are close to the laws that apply in nature.

**It is logical that, if before the 19<sup>th</sup> move the advantage belonged to White, then it could not evaporate after a series of forced moves.**

The player from Andorra should have aimed for dynamic play and **fought for the initiative** by 23. ♜a5!! ♖a4 24. b4. In this case White has numerous ways of strengthening his position by ♜g4, ♜c1 and ♜c6.

23. ... f5  
 24. gxf6 ♜xf6  
 25. ♜g4 ♖a6  
 26. ♜dg1 ♜f7  
 27. ♜g5 ♜xg5  
 28. ♜xg5 ♜f6  
 29. a3 ♜b8  
 30. ♜a1 ♖b7  
 31. ♜d3 ♖xd5

Black has restored material equality, while maintaining all the advantages of his position. White wakes up too late.

32. f4 h6  
 33. ♜g6 e4  
 34. ♖g2 ♜xh5

In time trouble both of the players lose control. Black missed 34... ♜e8 35. ♜c1 (35. ♜b4 ♜xb4) 35... ♖d4 36. ♜a2 ♜xf4 with good winning chances. And after:

35. ♜xh6 ♖xd3  
 36. ♖g6

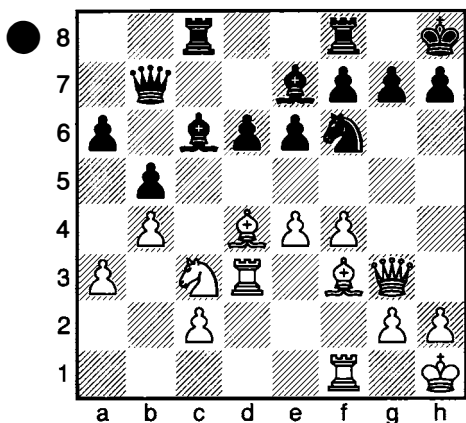
White missed a simple draw by 36. ♜xh5 ♜a7 37. ♖h2 ♜xa3+ 38. bxa3 ♖c3+ 39. ♜a2.

36. ... ♜xb2  
 37. ♜h8+ ♜xh8  
 38. ♖xh5+ ♜g8  
 39. ♜xg7+ ♜xg7  
 40. ♖g5+ ♜h7  
 41. ♖h4+ ♜g8  
 42. ♖g5+ ♜g7  
 43. ♖d8+ ♜f7  
 44. ♖d7+ ♜f6  
 45. ♖d8+ ♜e6  
 0-1

**A.Karpov – L.Ljubojevic**  
 Buenos Aires 1994

1. e4 c5  
 2. ♜f3 d6  
 3. d4 cxd4

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 4.  | ♖xd4 | ♜f6  |
| 5.  | ♜c3  | a6   |
| 6.  | ♙e2  | e6   |
| 7.  | 0-0  | ♙e7  |
| 8.  | f4   | ♞c7  |
| 9.  | ♔h1  | 0-0  |
| 10. | ♞e1  | ♜c6  |
| 11. | ♙e3  | ♜d7  |
| 12. | ♞g3  | ♔h8  |
| 13. | ♙f3  | ♞ac8 |
| 14. | ♞ad1 | b5   |
| 15. | a3   | ♜xd4 |
| 16. | ♙xd4 | ♙c6  |
| 17. | ♞d3  | ♞b7  |
| 18. | b4   |      |



A rare idea for the Sicilian Defence. White secures an impregnable post for his bishop at d4 and at the same time suppresses the opponent's counterplay on the queenside. The black king is in danger of becoming statically weak.

- |     |        |      |
|-----|--------|------|
| 18. | ...    | ♞g8  |
| 19. | e5     | ♜e4  |
| 20. | ♜xe4   | ♙xe4 |
| 21. | c3 (D) |      |

How can Black consolidate his position? We will study the four main possibilities: 21...f6, 21...d5, 21...f5 and 21...♙xf3.

21...f6 looks the most radical:

- A) 22.exf6 gxf6 23.♞h3 ♙xf3 24.♞dx3 e5 25.fxe5 dxe5 26.♙xe5 fxe5 27.♞f7 ♞g7

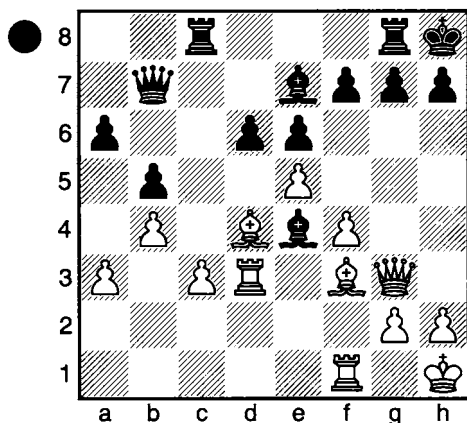
- 28.♞xg7 ♔xg7 29.♞g3+ (29.♞g4+ 29...♔h8 30.♞f7 ♞g8!-) 29...♔h6 30.♞h3+ (30.♞f7 ♞e4 31.♞g7+ ♔h5 32.♞xh7+ ♞xh7 33.♞xh7+ ♔g6 34.♞xe7 ♞xc3 35.h4 ♔f6 36.♞a7 ♞xa3?) 30...♔g7 31.♞g3+=;

B) 22.exd6 ♙xd6 23.♞g4 ♙xf3 24.♞dx3 e5 25.fxe5 fxe5 26.♙f2 ♞cf8 (26...♞c4 leads Black nowhere after 27.♞e6 ♞e7 28.♞d5 e4 29.♞f5) 27.♞d1 ♞xf3 28.♞xf3 e4 (28...♞xf3 29.gxf3) 29.♞f5 ♞e7 (29...♞c7) and the black king is no longer in any danger;

C) 22.♙xe4! (the only reply that keeps an advantage) 22...♞xe4 23.♞e3 ♞f5 (23...♞d5 is met by 24.♞g6, a key idea in White's attack) 24.♞e1 ♞ce8 25.♞e2 fxe5 (25...d5 26.g4 ♞g6 27.f5±) 26.fxe5 ♞g5 27.♞g3 ♞h6 28.♞d3 ♞ef8 29.♞xf8 ♞xf8 30.exd6 ♞c1+ 31.♙g1 ♞f1 32.♞xf1 ♞xf1 33.dxe7 ♞f7 34.♞f3 ♞xe7 35.♙c5+-.

21...d5. Here the game concludes after the already familiar reply 22.♙xe4 dxe4 23.♞e3 f5 24.♞g6!.

21...f5 22.exd6 ♙xd6 23.♞h4 ♞f7 (23...♞e7 24.♞xe7 ♙xe7 25.♙xe4 fxe4 26.♞e3±) 24.♙xe4 fxe4 25.♞h3 ♞g6 26.g4 e3 (26...♞gf8 27.f5 exf5 28.gxf5 ♞xf5 29.♞g1+-; 26...♞cf8 27.f5 exf5 28.gxf5 ♞xf5 29.♞g1+-) 27.♞xe3 ♞cf8 28.♞h5 ♞xh5 29.gxh5+-.



Position after 21.c3

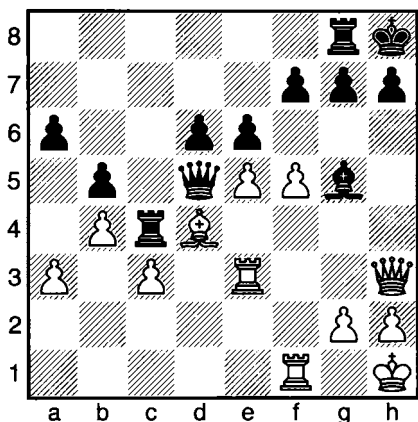
21. ... ♖xf3  
 22. ♖dxf3 ♔e4

Unfortunately for Ljubojevic, after 22...f6 White once again exploits the motif 23.♗g6!.

23. ♖e3 ♗d5

If 23...♗f5, then 24.♗f3 (intending 25.g4) 24...d5! (24...h5 25.♗b7±) 25.g4 (25.♖e2 h5; 25.♗h3 ♗xh3 26.♖xh3 g6) 25...♗c2 26.f5 ♖g5 27.♖e2 ♗b3 28.♖g2 (28.fxe6 fxe6 29.♗f7 ♗c4 30.♖ef2 ♗c6 31.♔g2±) 28...♗xa3 29.h4 ♖e7 30.g5 a5 31.f6 with the initiative.

24. ♗h3 ♖c4  
 25. f5 ♖g5



After 25...exf5 (if 25...dxe5 26.♗xh7+ with mate in two moves) 26.♗xf5 Black's pawn formation is worsened without any improvement in the position of his king.

26. ♖g3

Karpov systematically plays on the king-side, whereas he could have transformed his superiority by 26.♖e1 f6 27.exd6 exf5 28.♖c5.

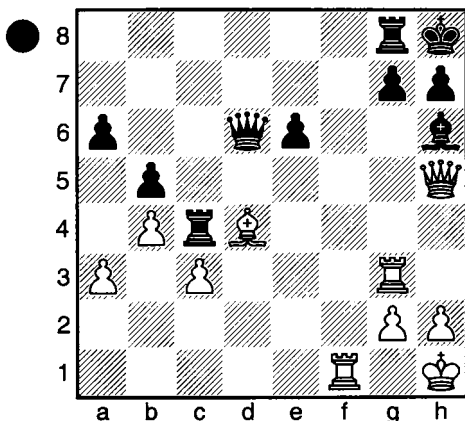
26. ... ♖h6

The black king would again have perished after 26...dxe5 27.♖xg5 exd4 28.♗xh7+.

27. fxe6

As usual, Karpov converts his advantage with extreme clarity. After 27.exd6? ♗xd6 28.♗xh6 ♗xd4 (28...♖xd4 29.♗xh7+) Black would have unexpectedly equalised.

27. ... fxe6  
 28. exd6 ♗xd6  
 29. ♗h5



29. ... ♖xd4

An attempt to prolong the resistance, whereas 29...♖cc8 30.♖g6 ♖gf8 31.♖g1 would have lost immediately. The rest is of little interest.

30. cxd4 ♗xd4  
 31. ♖gf3 ♗d6  
 32. ♖f7 ♖e3  
 33. ♗f3 ♖d4  
 34. ♖f8 ♖f6  
 35. ♖xg8+ ♔xg8  
 36. ♖d1 ♗b6

If 36...♖d4 White wins by 37.♗a8+ ♔f7 38.♗e4 e5 39.♖f1+.

37. ♗a8+ ♔f7  
 38. ♖d7+ ♔g6

Equally hopeless was 38...♖e7 39.♗a7! (but not 39.♗b7? ♗f2! 40.♖xe7+ ♔f8).

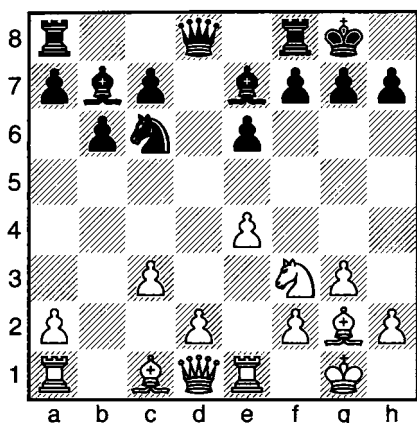
39. ♗e4+ ♔h6  
 40. ♖d3 ♗f2  
 41. ♖h3+ ♔g5  
 42. ♖g3+ ♔h6  
 43. ♖h3+ ♔g5  
 44. ♖f3 ♗d2  
 45. h4+ ♔h6  
 46. ♗xe6



## V.Kramnik – V.Ivanchuk

Amber (blind), Monte Carlo 1997

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | ♘f3  | ♙f6  |
| 2.  | c4   | b6   |
| 3.  | g3   | ♙b7  |
| 4.  | ♙g2  | e6   |
| 5.  | 0-0  | ♙e7  |
| 6.  | ♘c3  | 0-0  |
| 7.  | ♙e1  | d5   |
| 8.  | cxd5 | ♘xd5 |
| 9.  | e4   | ♘xc3 |
| 10. | bxc3 | ♘c6  |



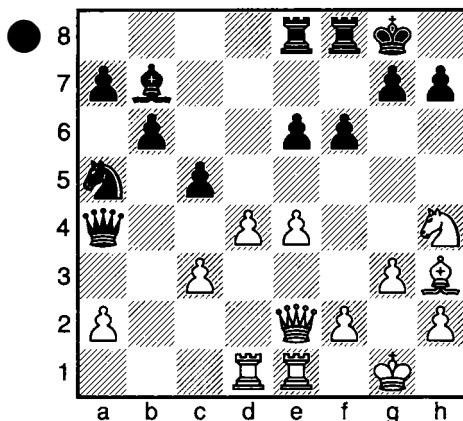
The direction of the play has taken shape. Thus Black, with his pawn majority on the queenside, will aim for simplification, whereas White, with his central d-pawn, will strive for dynamic play.

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 11. | d4  | ♘a5 |
| 12. | ♙f4 | ♙d6 |

So far Ivanchuk's play has been assured. After the hasty 12...c5 White would have achieved his aim with 13.d5 exd5 14.exd5 ♙f6 15.♘e5.

- |     |       |      |
|-----|-------|------|
| 13. | ♘e5   | ♙e7  |
| 14. | ♙g4   | f6   |
| 15. | ♘f3   | ♙a3  |
| 16. | ♙c1   | ♙ae8 |
| 17. | ♘h4   | ♙xc1 |
| 18. | ♙axc1 | ♙a3  |
| 19. | ♙e2   | c5   |
| 20. | ♙h3   | ♙a4  |

## 21. ♙cd1



At the end of a series of forced moves the game reaches a critical point. Black has already revealed his trumps, but he still has to counter the opponent's offensive.

## 21. ... ♙c6?

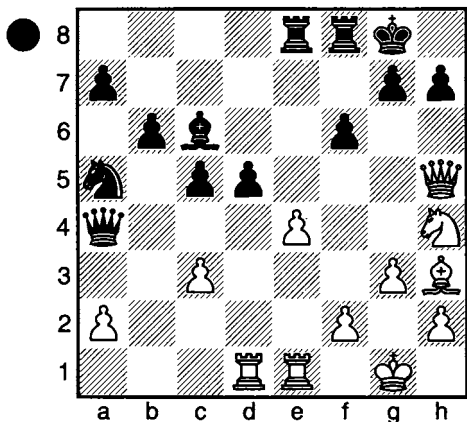
A careless move, which costs Black dearly. To me 21...cxd4 22.cxd4 ♙e7 seems correct. This multi-purpose manoeuvre clears the eighth rank for the other rook and also prepares for the inclusion of the queen in the defence after 23.d5 exd5 24.♙h5 (24.♘f5 ♙xe4) 24...♙e8. A complicated position with chances for both sides arises after 23.e5 ♙d5 24.exf6 ♙xf6.

Black could also have chosen the more risky 21...cxd4 22.cxd4 f5. In the following variations he relies on the exchange of queens:

A) 23.d5 g6! (the consequences of 23...exd5 24.♙xf5 ♙c6 25.♙h5 ♙h6 are far from obvious) 24.♙d2 (after 24.♙e3 f4! 25.gxf4 exd5 Black seizes the initiative) 24...♙d7 25.♙h6 ♙g7;

B) 23.exf5 exf5 24.♙h5 g6! (but not 24...♙xe1+ 25.♙xe1 ♙c6 26.♙g2 ♙f6 27.♙xb7 ♘xb7 28.♙e5 g6 29.♙e2 and White dominates) 25.♘xg6?? ♙c6 and Black wins a piece.

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 22. | d5  | exd5 |
| 23. | ♙h5 |      |



It would appear that the Ukrainian grandmaster simply overlooked this idea.

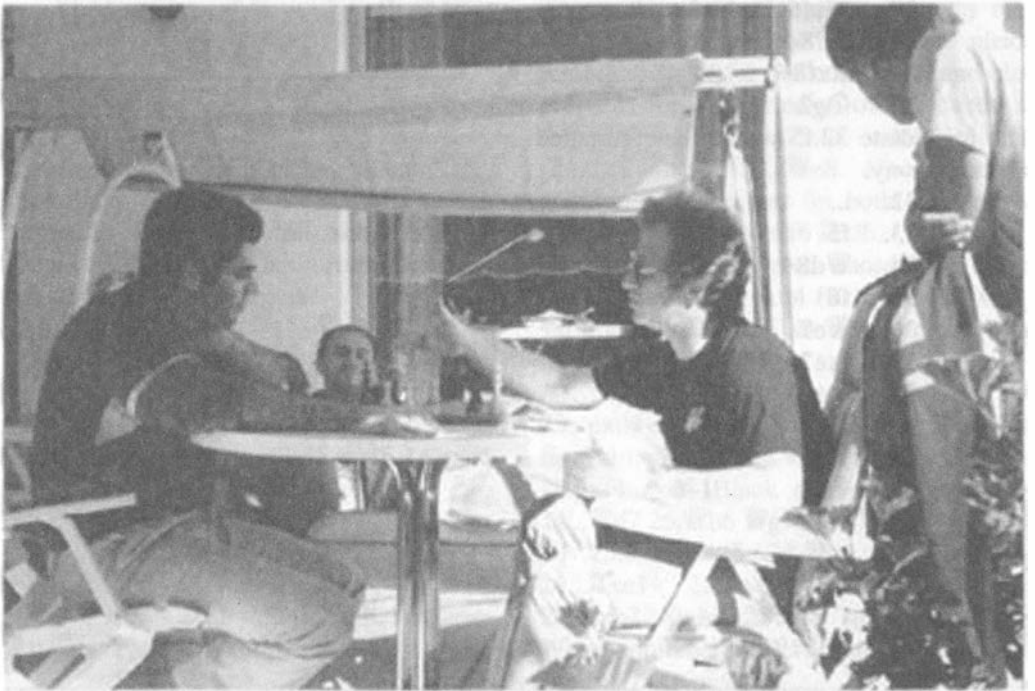
- |     |       |      |
|-----|-------|------|
| 23. | ...   | ♖e5  |
| 24. | ♙f5   | g6   |
| 25. | ♚g4   | ♙e8  |
| 26. | f4    | ♖xe4 |
| 27. | ♙xe4  | dxe4 |
| 28. | ♚e6+  | ♙f7  |
| 29. | ♚xf6  | e3   |
| 30. | ♖d8   | ♚e4  |
| 31. | ♖xf8+ | ♙xf8 |
| 32. | ♘g2   |      |

The immediate 32.f5 would have curtailed Black's agony.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 32. | ...  | ♘c4  |
| 33. | f5   | ♙g8  |
| 34. | ♚d8+ | ♙e8  |
| 35. | f6   | ♚e5  |
| 36. | ♚e7  | ♚xe7 |
| 37. | fxe7 | ♙f7  |
| 38. | ♘xe3 | ♘d2  |
| 39. | ♖e2  | ♘f3+ |
| 40. | ♙f2  | ♘g5  |
| 41. | ♘c4  | 1-0  |



**Analyse with Tsechskovsky, Dorfman, Panchenko, Antoshin, Tal, T.Petrosian and Karpov at the USSR championship, 1976**



**Gary Kasparov and Iossif Dorfman**

### 1B. THE CONCEPT OF A SECURE SHELTER

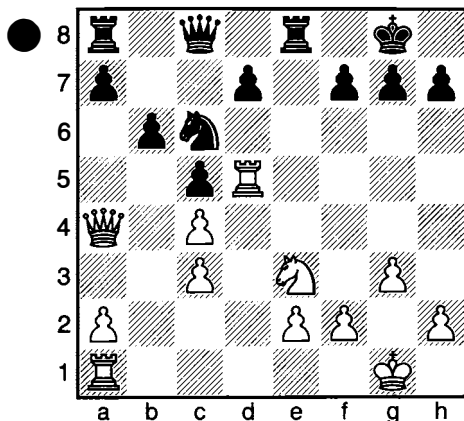
Roughly one half of the first chapter is devoted to a study of positions where one of the sides already has a significant advantage, but his king is in danger, being unable to castle for one reason or another. But it can be evacuated to a well defended place, which we will call a 'secure shelter'.

Sometimes the king runs to the shelter under the crossfire of the enemy pieces. As a rule, the successful arrival in a peaceful harbour signifies a turning point in the game. In other words, it increases the value of static factors. This is why a player must be able to see clearly the difference between the dynamic and static weakness of the king.

The material offered below is aimed at expanding the idea of the secure shelter and at demonstrating the danger of static concessions. A deep understanding of the role of this element should enrich the reader's imagination and enable him to find his way more easily in complicated situations.

Later, analysing a position on p.104, you will observe a mistake by Tigran Petrosian, associated with underestimating the role of the secure shelter for the king in a number of calculated variations. And yet he was an unsurpassed expert on this problem. Thus, it is never too late to learn something new.

### P.Benko – P.Keres Los Angeles 1963



The static evaluation:

$$1. = 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

is advantageous to White. Keres sharply changes the character of the play and with an exchange sacrifice he seizes the initiative.

18. ... ♖xe3!

19. fx3

I suggest that we again draw up the static evaluation:

$$1. \mp 2. \pm 3. \pm 4. \mp$$

Thus from now on, despite the loss of material, Black should play statically. Whereas White, who has no shelter for his king, will try by exchanges to weaken the opponent's pressure.

19. ... ♔e8

20. ♖c2

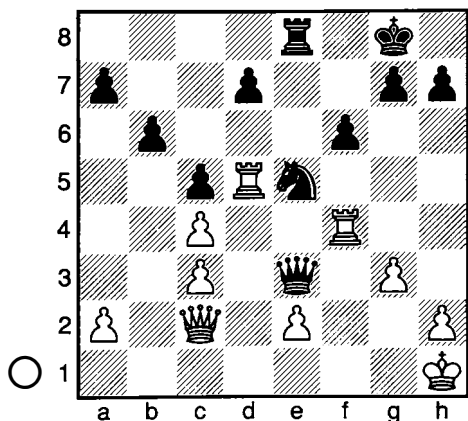
Black's task would perhaps have been rather more difficult after 20.♔f2. But nevertheless he would have solved it with 20...♖e6 21.♖ad1 ♖e8 22.♖1d3 ♔e5 23.♖xd7 ♔xd3+ 24.♖xd3 g6 25.♔e1 ♖e7 26.♔d2 ♔g7, when he retains all the trumps of his position.

20. ... ♖xe3+

21. ♔h1 ♔e5

22. ♖f1 ♖e8

23. ♖f4 f6



24. ♖e4

White is at a loss. He has no way of opposing the opponent's static play, and even after the desired exchange of queens he ends up in a hopeless situation.

24. ... ♘g6  
25. ♕xe3 ♗xe3  
26. ♖xd7

After the interposition of 26.♖f3 ♗xe2 27.♖xd7 ♘e5 28.♖d8+ ♔f7 White is also helpless.

26...♘xf4 27.gxf4 ♗xe2 28.♖xa7 ♖f2  
29.♖b7 ♖xf4 30.♖xb6 ♖xc4 31.♖b3 ♔f7  
32.♔g2 g5 33.♔f3 ♔e6 34.♖a3 h5 35.♔e2  
♖h4 36.♖a6+ ♔e5 37.a4 c4 38.♖c6 ♖xh2+  
39.♔e3 ♖h3+ 40.♔d2 ♖d3+ 41.♔c2 h4  
42.♖xc4 ♖d8 0-1

'In the following game the queen + knight tandem coordinated well.

### S.Matveeva – M.Litinskaya

Yerevan 1985

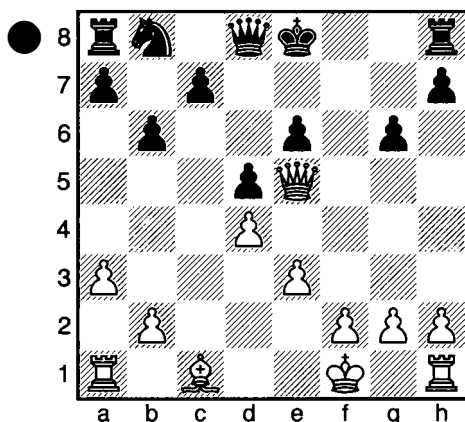
(D)

This well-known theoretical position was reached in one of the lines of the Nimzo-Indian Defence with 4...b6.

Why did it attract the attention of the Ukrainian player? Outward appearances are deceptive and the static evaluation turns out to be positive for Black:

1. = 2. ♖ 3. ± 4. ♖

After all, the black king has a secure shelter at b7. The game continued:



14. ... ♔d7!

This king manoeuvre makes everything clear – the black monarch is aiming for its ideal post. In the subsequent play the favourable queen + knight tandem will give Black the advantage. I should mention in passing that it would be absurd to play 14...♔f7?, since this would take the king away from its shelter.

15. ♗d2?

The situation demands **dynamic** action. It seems to me that White should have aimed for the exchange of queens, by attacking the kingside.

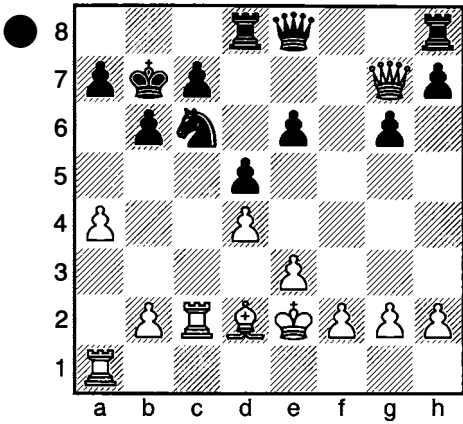
A) 15.h4 ♖g8! (15...♘c6 16.♕g7+ ♔c8 17.h5 ♔b7 18.♗d2), and the desired exchange cannot be achieved;

B) 15.e4 ♘c6 16.♕g7+ ♕e7 (16...♔c8 17.exd5 exd5 18.♗f4 ♔b7 19.♖c1) 17.♕xe7+ ♘xe7 18.f3;

C) 15.♕g7+! ♔c8 16.♕f7! ♖d6 17.♕g7 ♖d8 18.♕f7 with a draw.

15. ... ♗c6  
16. ♕g7+ ♔c8  
17. ♔e2 ♔b7  
18. ♖hc1 ♕e8  
19. ♖c2 ♖d8  
20. a4 (D)

White tries to revive her dying initiative, but the favourable moment has already been missed. Her queen is out of play, and her bishop absolutely useless.

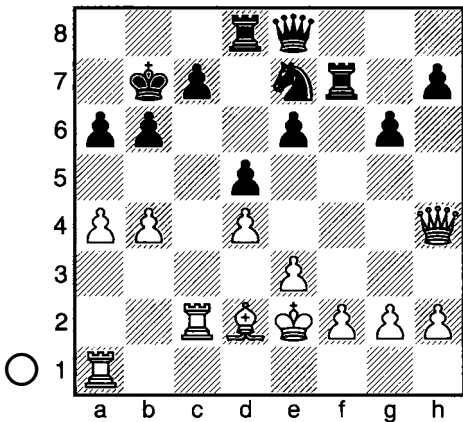


Position after 20.a4

20. ... ♖f8  
21. b4

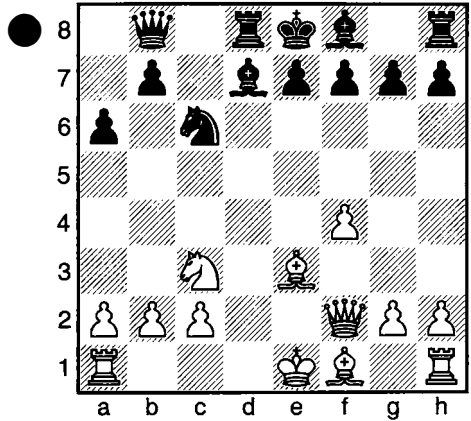
After 21. ♗xh7 ♜h8 22. ♗g7 ♜d7 23. ♗f6 ♜f7 24. ♗g5 ♜xh2 Black breaks into the enemy position.

21. ... ♜f7  
22. ♗h6 a6  
23. ♗h4 ♘e7



The situation has stabilised and White is in great difficulties.

**D.Reinderman – I.Dorfman**  
Brussels (Zonal Tournament) 1993

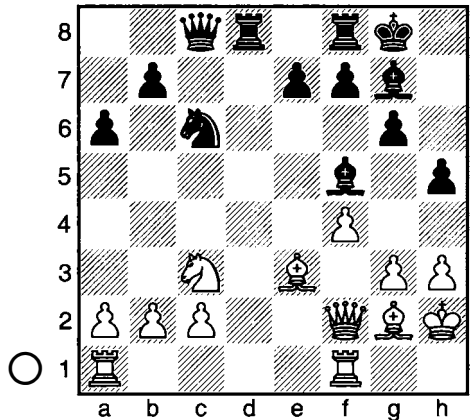


After primitive development by 13...g6 14. ♘b6 ♜c8 15. 0-0 ♘g7 16. ♘d5 Black has no way of opposing the opponent's pressure.

13. ... ♘f5!

A timely manoeuvre. Queenside castling is ruled out and the white king remains without a shelter. The static evaluation is correspondingly inclined in favour of Black:

1. ♗ 2. = 3. ± 4. ♗  
14. h3 h5  
15. g3 g6  
16. ♘g2 ♘g7  
17. 0-0 0-0  
18. ♜h2 ♗c8



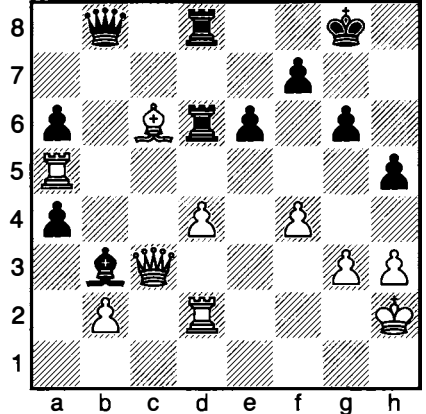
Playing statically means, in particular, not allowing the opponent to disrupt the existing evaluation. In this case the prophylaxis is aimed at preventing counterplay after  $\text{♙f3}$  and  $\text{g3-g4}$ .

- 19.  $\text{♗a4}$        $\text{♜d4}$
- 20.  $\text{♖ac1}$       $\text{b5}$
- 21.  $\text{c3}$          $\text{♝f3+}$
- 22.  $\text{♚xf3}$       $\text{bxa4}$

23.  $\text{♚c6}$  runs into 23...  $\text{♙xh3}$ .

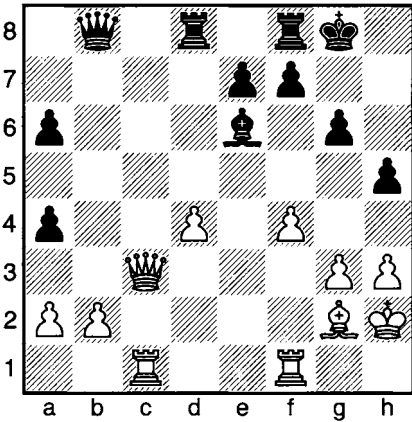
- 23.  $\text{♙d4}$        $\text{♙xd4}$
- 24.  $\text{cxd4}$       $\text{♚b8}$
- 25.  $\text{♚c3}$        $\text{♙e6}$

Again a static manoeuvre, preventing the modification of the pawn structure by  $\text{d4-d5}$ , and at the same time preparing a further weakening of the white king's position after  $\text{♙d5}$ .



Position after 32.  $\text{♙c6}$

- 33.  $\text{♙xa4}$   $\text{hgx3+}$  34.  $\text{♙xg3}$   $\text{♙xa4}$  35.  $\text{♖xa4}$
- $\text{♜d5}$  36.  $\text{h4}$   $\text{♜f5}$  37.  $\text{♖f2}$   $\text{♜b5}$  38.  $\text{♙h2}$   $\text{♜c8}$
- 39.  $\text{♚d2}$   $\text{♚d6}$  40.  $\text{♚d3}$   $\text{♜c1}$  41.  $\text{♚e4}$   $\text{♙h5}$
- 42.  $\text{♙h3}$   $\text{♚d8}$  43.  $\text{♜g2}$   $\text{♚xh4}$       **mate**



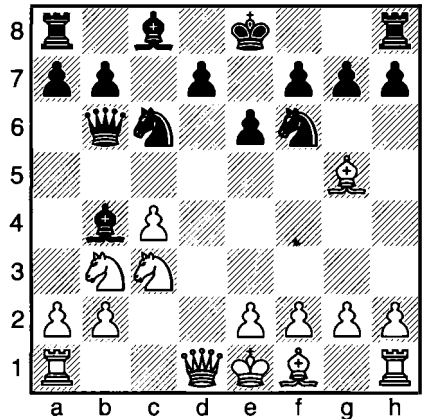
- 26.  $\text{♜fe1}$        $\text{♜d6}$

Beginning a combined attack on the king and on the weaknesses at  $\text{d4}$  and  $\text{f4}$ .

- 27.  $\text{♜e5}$        $\text{♜c8}$
- 28.  $\text{♜c5}$        $\text{♜cd8}$
- 29.  $\text{♜d1}$        $\text{♙xa2}$
- 30.  $\text{♜d2}$        $\text{e6}$
- 31.  $\text{♜a5}$        $\text{♙b3}$
- 32.  $\text{♙c6 (D)}$   $\text{h4}$

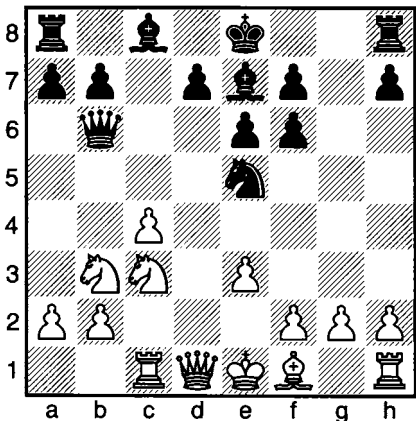
This breakthrough, which has been in the air for a long time, crowns Black's strategy. From now on the white king is left on its own against the opponent's army.

**I. Dorfman – Z. Varga**  
Cannes 1993



At an early stage of the game White is able to deprive the enemy king of a shelter by a simple exchange of minor pieces.

- 8.  $\text{♙xf6}$        $\text{gxf6}$
- 9.  $\text{♜c1}$          $\text{♗e5}$
- 10.  $\text{e3}$          $\text{♙e7}$



○

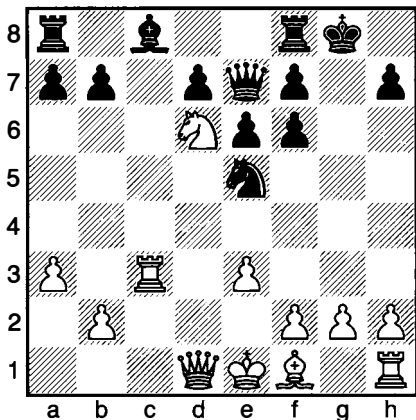
Black is still dreaming of achieving a reasonable position after d7-d6, ♖d7 and 0-0-0.

11. c5!

A sacrifice which clarifies the situation. At an insignificant cost White invades the enemy position and cuts the communications between the flanks.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 11. | ...  | ♙xc5 |
| 12. | ♗xc5 | ♜xc5 |
| 13. | ♘b5  | ♜b4+ |
| 14. | ♞c3  | 0-0  |
- 14... ♜xb2 15.a3 was hopeless.
- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 15. | a3  | ♜e7 |
| 16. | ♘d6 |     |

●



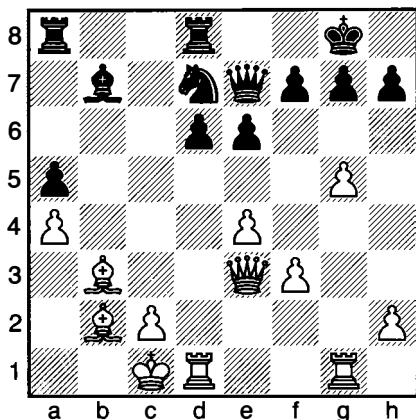
The remainder is not of interest. With an overwhelming material advantage on the main part of the battlefield, White smashes the enemy kingside.

- |     |       |     |
|-----|-------|-----|
| 16. | ...   | ♞b8 |
| 17. | f4    | ♘g6 |
| 18. | h4    | ♞d8 |
| 19. | h5    | ♘f8 |
| 20. | ♞h3   | ♜h8 |
| 21. | ♞g3   | f5  |
| 22. | ♘xf7+ | 1-0 |

If 22... ♜xf7, then 23. ♜d4+.

**H.Hamdouchi – I.Dorfman**  
France 1996

●



Here the b2 bishop is exerting strong pressure on the enemy king position. The attempt to weaken its activity by 20...e5 leads to disaster after 21.g6 hxg6 22.♞xg6 ♘c5 23.♞dg1 ♘xb3+ 24.♜xb3.

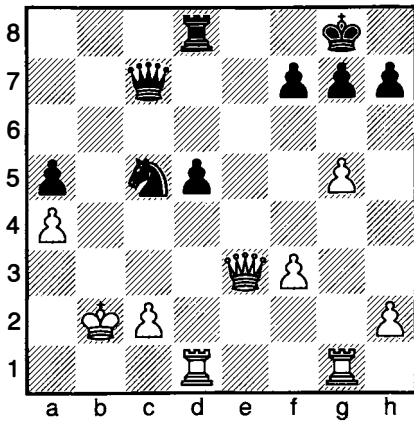
Black decides on an exchange sacrifice, to deprive the white king of its shelter.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 20. | ...  | ♘e5  |
| 21. | ♙f6  | ♜c7  |
| 22. | ♙xd8 | ♞xd8 |
| 23. | ♜b2  | d5   |
| 24. | exd5 | ♙xd5 |

Eliminating the king's chief defender, after which it perishes ignominiously in the fruitless search for a shelter on the opposite flank.



25. ♖xd5 exd5

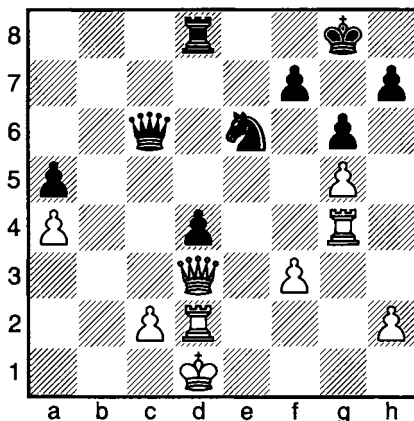


It is pointless, and even simply harmful, to engage in an exchange of tactical blows after 25... ♖xa4+ 26. ♖c1 exd5 27. ♖xd5.

26. ♖g4 g6  
 27. ♖c1 ♖e6  
 28. ♖d2! ♖d6!

By methodical action Black ensures the advance of his d-pawn, which cuts the board in two.

29. ♖d1 d4  
 30. ♖d3 ♖c6



31. ♖e2 ♖xa4  
 32. ♖f2 ♖c6  
 33. h4 ♖c7  
 34. ♖g1 a4

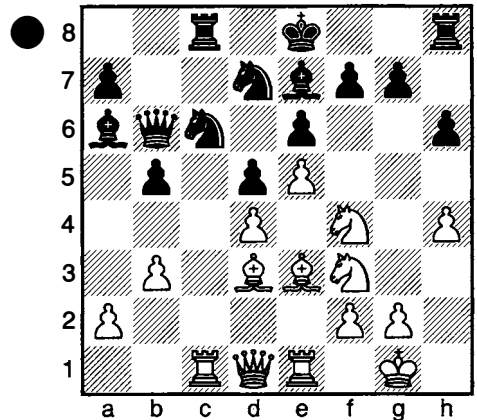
35. c3

At the height of the time scramble the Moroccan grandmaster does not want to watch silently as the opponent's passed pawn advances. He makes a reckless pawn break and suffers decisive loss of material.

35. ... dxc3  
 0-1

For a deeper study of the element in question, the reader is invited to analyse a number of subtle examples, demonstrating the aesthetic richness of chess.

V. Anand – J. Timman  
 Tilburg 1991



Timman's position looks dangerous. He still has to solve the problem of his king.

20. ... ♖d8!

An excellent idea. The black king heads for b8, where it will find peace.

21. ♖e2 ♖a3  
 22. ♖c2 ♖b4  
 23. ♖xc8+ ♖xc8  
 24. ♖c1?! (D)

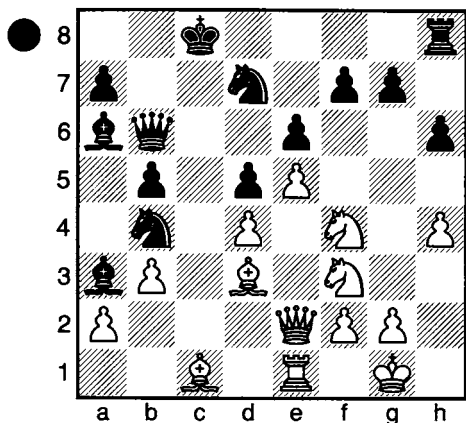
24. ♖b1 ♖c6 25. ♖c1 ♖e7 would have led to equality.

24. ... ♖xc1?

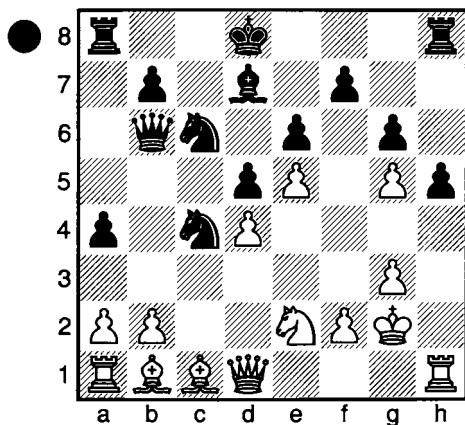
It is hard to justify such an unfavourable exchange. Black could have improved his chances of success by 24... ♖xd3 25. ♖xd3

♔e7. Nevertheless, after a tense struggle he won on move 55.

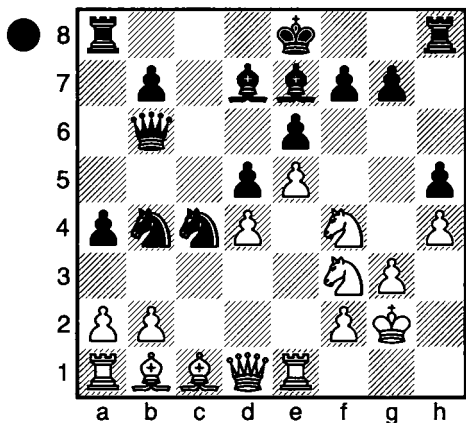
21. **hxg5**      **g6**  
 22. **♖e2**      **♗c6**  
 23. **♜h1**



Position after 24. ♗c1?!



**E. Ermenkov – V. Kovacevic**  
 Kavala 1990



The Croatian grandmaster has developed strong pressure on the queenside. It remains for him to decide about his king. It is weak dynamically, as Black's excellent reply demonstrates.

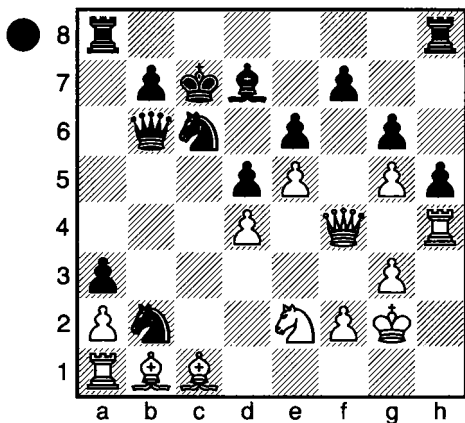
19. ...      **♔d8!**

The plan is to regroup by ♗c7, g7-g6, ♜hc8 and ♗b8 with the initiative for Black.

20. **♗g5**      **♗xg5**

23. ...      **♔c7!**  
 After the dubious 23... ♗xb2?! 24. ♖d2 a3 25. ♖f4 ♗c7 26. ♖xf7 ♗c4 27. ♗xg6 (27. ♗f4 ♗d8 28. ♖g7 ♖xd4 29. ♖xh8 ♖xa1 30. ♗xg6 ♖xa2 31. ♗d3 ♖b3 32. g6 a2 33. g7 a1 ♖ 34. g8 ♖) leads to an unclear position where each side has two queens) 27... ♜af8 28. ♖g7 ♜hg8 29. ♖h7 ♜h8 30. ♜b1 ♖a6 31. ♖g7 ♜hg8 32. ♖h6 White stands better.

24. **♜h4**      **♗xb2**  
 25. **♖d2**      **a3**  
 26. **♖f4**



26. ... ♖hc8!

Black consistently carries out the plan that he decided on before his 19<sup>th</sup> move. If 26...♖h8, then 27.♗f3 with the idea of 28.♗f4, and White has counter-chances.

27. ♗xf7 ♖f8

28. ♗xg6 ♖d1

The Croatian player sees through the trap prepared by his opponent: if 28...♖xe5?, then 29.♙f4 ♗xf4 30.♗c2+.

29. ♗f4

The variation 29.♗c2 ♗xf2+ 30.♙g1 (30.♙h3 ♗b2!) 30...♗af8 31.♗f4 (31.♗xd1 ♗f1+ 32.♗xf1 ♗xf1+ 33.♙xf1 ♗b2!) 31...♗8xf4 32.gxf4 ♗xe2 was also completely clear. And even after the comparatively tenacious 29.♙c2 ♗xf2+ 30.♙h3 ♗b4! 31.♗d3 ♖b2 32.♙xb2 axb2 33.♗b1 ♗xa2 34.♖c3 ♗a1 the complications favour Black.

29...♗b2!! 30.♙c2 ♗xa1 31.♙xd1 ♗xf4 32.gxf4 ♗xa2 33.f5 ♗b1 34.♖c3 ♗xc1 35.fxe6 ♗xc3 36.exd7 ♗xd4 37.♗d6+ ♙b6 38.e6 a2 39.♙f3 ♗c5 0-1

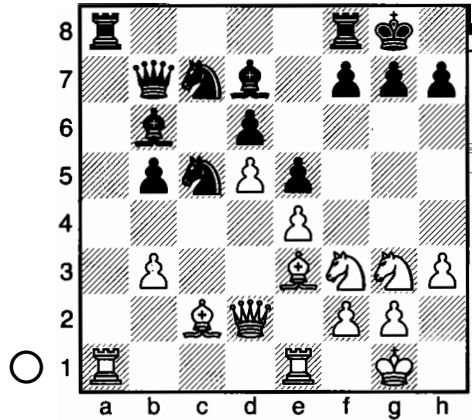
## Ye Jiangchuan – I.Dorfman

Elista (Olympiad) 1998

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | e4   | e5   |
| 2.  | ♖f3  | ♖c6  |
| 3.  | ♙b5  | a6   |
| 4.  | ♙a4  | ♖f6  |
| 5.  | 0-0  | ♙e7  |
| 6.  | ♗e1  | b5   |
| 7.  | ♙b3  | d6   |
| 8.  | c3   | 0-0  |
| 9.  | h3   | ♖a5  |
| 10. | ♙c2  | c5   |
| 11. | d4   | ♖d7  |
| 12. | ♖bd2 | cxd4 |
| 13. | cxd4 | ♖c6  |
| 14. | ♖b3  | a5   |
| 15. | ♙e3  | a4   |
| 16. | ♖bd2 | ♙f6  |
| 17. | d5   | ♖b4  |
| 18. | ♙b1  | ♖c5  |

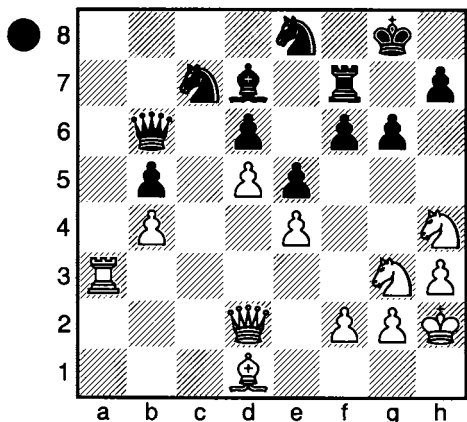
In view of the importance of the result in the France-China match, I decided not to play sharp variations aimed at seizing the initiative, but to try and adhere to restrained strategy. The Keres Variation in the Ruy Lopez is in full accord with this aim.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 19. | ♖f1  | ♖ba6 |
| 20. | ♙c2  | ♖b4  |
| 21. | ♙b1  | ♖ba6 |
| 22. | ♗d2  | ♙d7  |
| 23. | ♙c2  | ♗b8  |
| 24. | ♗a1  | ♙d8  |
| 25. | b4   | axb3 |
| 26. | axb3 | ♙b6  |
| 27. | ♗a1  | ♗b7  |
| 28. | ♖g3  | ♖c7  |



Black has harmoniously arranged his forces, but his position remains somewhat inferior. The c6 square demands constant attention and on the kingside there is a lack of defenders.

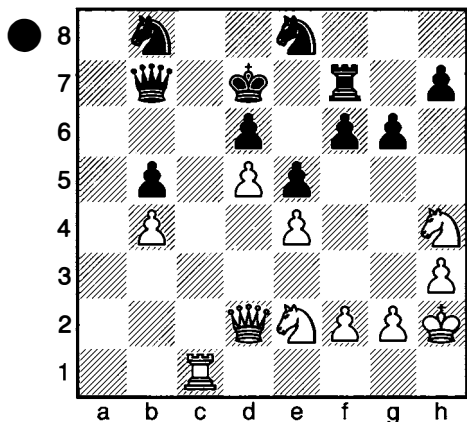
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 29. | ♖h5  | ♗xa1 |
| 30. | ♗xa1 | ♖e8  |
| 31. | ♗a3  | f6   |
| 32. | ♖h4  | ♗f7  |
| 33. | ♖g3  | g6   |
| 34. | ♙h2  | ♖a6  |
| 35. | b4   | ♙xe3 |
| 36. | ♗xe3 | ♗b6  |
| 37. | ♗a3  | ♖ac7 |
| 38. | ♙d1  |      |



Black successfully bolsters his defences, while the opponent keeps finding new ideas for intensifying the pressure.

Not long before the Olympiad I had been editing the French version of this book and thanks to the accumulated experience, with the flag on my clock practically vertical, I was able to solve the problem of my king's safety.

- 38. ... ♔f8!
- 39. ♙g4 ♔e7
- 40. ♙xd7 ♔xd7
- 41. ♖c3 ♘a6
- 42. ♖c6 ♚b7
- 43. ♞e2 ♞b8
- 44. ♖c1



44. ... ♔d8  
The king finds a safe shelter and White's play on the kingside comes to a standstill.

- 45. ♖a1 ♚b6
- 46. ♞c3 ♖a7

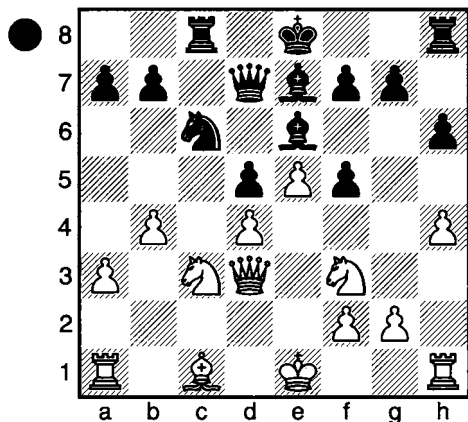
After the exchange of rooks the position becomes completely equal.

- 47. ♖xa7 ♚xa7
- 48. ♚e2 ½-½

If 48. ♞xb5, then 48... ♚a4

**P.Nikolic – U.Andersson**  
Amber (blind), Monte Carlo 1997

- 1. d4 e6
- 2. e4 d5
- 3. e5 c5
- 4. c3 ♞c6
- 5. ♞f3 ♞ge7
- 6. ♙d3 cxd4
- 7. cxd4 ♞f5
- 8. ♙xf5 exf5
- 9. ♞c3 ♙e6
- 10. a3 ♙e7
- 11. h4 h6
- 12. b4 ♚d7
- 13. ♚c2 ♖c8
- 14. ♚d3



From the very start of the game White has demonstrated a strong desire to harass the enemy king. For Black it is bad, naturally, to attack the centre with ...f7-f6 since this allows the opponent to increase his pressure on the weakened dark squares. In these circumstances the only possible modification of the pawn structure by a7-a5 leaves him in difficulties after the manoeuvre ♖c3-e2-f4-h5.

The Swedish grandmaster comes up with a subtle idea. He plans to evacuate his king to the queenside to its safest shelter. As a result of this action, kingside castling by White looks bad in view of the eventual breakthrough g7-g5.

I should like to mention that 14...0-0 is sound, since after 15.♔d2 (but not 15.♗e2 ♗xb4+) 15...♗b8! 16.♗e2 ♖a4 Black invades the enemy position.

14. ... ♔d8

15. ♔d2 ♔c7

14. ♗e2

The battle has reached its height. Its outcome depends on the position of the black king. In accordance with the evaluation Black should play statically. He has a significant advantage thanks to the bishop pair and the possibility of advantageously modifying the pawn structure after g7-g5.

16. ... b6

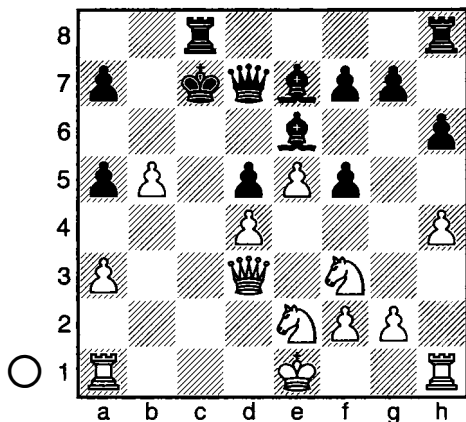
After 16...♗b8 17.b5 ♗d8 18.a4 (a loss of time allows the opponent to set up a defensive line by 18...0-0 b6 19.a4 ♗b7 20.a5 ♗xa5 21.♔xa5 bxa5 22.♖xa5 ♔d8 23.♖a6 ♗b6) 18...b6 19.a5 bxa5 20.♔xa5 ♗b7 Black controls the situation. If instead 17...0-0, then 17...♗a8! 18.b5 ♗b8 19.a4 g6 followed by 20...♖d8 and 21...g5.

17. b5 ♗a5

In my view, Black should have aimed for the afore-mentioned set-up by playing 17...♗d8 18.a4 ♗b7 19.0-0 ♗b8 20.a5 ♗xa5 21.♔xa5 bxa5 22.♖xa5 ♔d8.

18. ♔xa5 bxa5 (D)

In order to complete his regrouping, Black only needs to play ♗b7 and ♔d8-b6.



Position after 18...bxa5

19. b6+!

An excellent continuation. To deprive the opponent's king of its shelter, White does not hesitate to sacrifice a pawn.

19. ... axb6

20. ♖a6 ♗b8

Also after 20...♗d8 21.♖xb6+ ♖c7 22.♖a6 the white pieces do not leave the black king in peace.

21. ♖xb6+ ♗b7

22. ♖xa5 ♖c2

23. ♗f4 ♔d8

24. ♖a4 ♖c4

25. ♖d1 ♔a5+

26. ♗f1 ♗a7

27. g3 ♖b8

28. ♗g2 ♔c3

29. ♖c1 ♖b3

30. ♖d3 ♔b2

The resulting ending turns out to be lost, but in any case it is not clear how Black should respond. 30...♖xa3 runs into 31.♖a1 and the threat of 31.♗d2 has to be parried.

31. ♖xb3 ♖xb3

32. ♖xc4 dxc4

33. ♗d2 ♖c3

34. ♗xe6 fxe6

35. d5 exd5

36. e6

Black cannot stop the passed pawn without substantial loss of material.

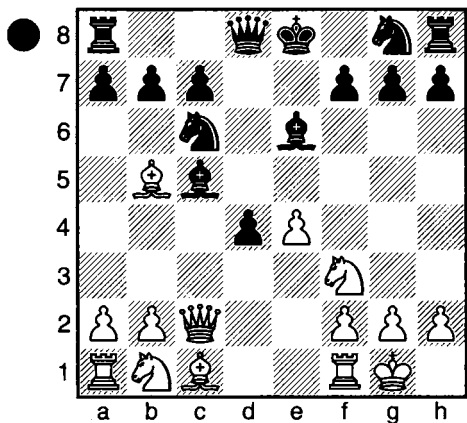
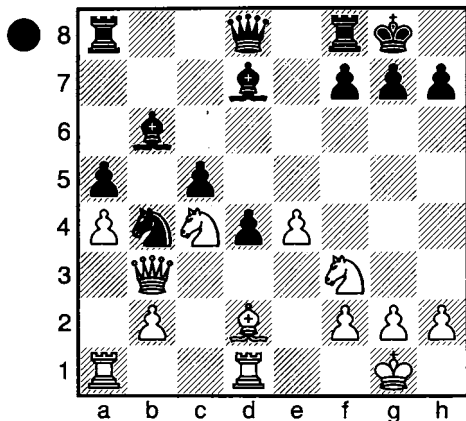
- 36. ... ♖xa3
- 37. ♘b1 ♜c2
- 38. ♘xa3 ♜e2
- 39. ♜d1 ♜xe6
- 40. ♜xd5 ♜c6
- 1-0

- 11. ♖xc6+ ♕d7
- 12. ♖c2 ♘e7
- 13. ♘a3 0-0
- 14. ♘c4 ♘c6
- 15. ♜d1' ♘b4
- 16. ♖b3 c5
- 17. ♕d2

**L. Van Wely – V. Anand**

Amber (blind), Monte Carlo 1997

- 1. d4 d5
- 2. c4 dxc4
- 3. e4 e5
- 4. ♘f3 exd4
- 5. ♕xc4 ♘c6
- 6. 0-0 ♕e6
- 7. ♕b5 ♕c5
- 8. ♖c2



Another method of attack, 8. ♘bd2, was met in exemplary fashion in the game Piket-Anand, Hoogoven Blitz, Wijk aan Zee 1999: 8... ♘ge7 9. ♘g5 ♖d7 10. ♘xe6 ♖xe6 11. ♘b3 ♕b6 12. ♘xd4 ♕xd4 13. ♖xd4 0-0 14. ♖a4 a6 15. ♕c4 ♖g6 16. ♕d3 b5. In my view, 16... ♜fd8 was even more accurate. A pretty demonstration of dynamism in chess.

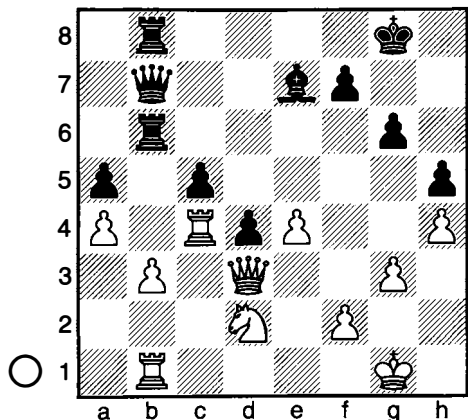
- 8. ... ♕b6
- 9. a4 a5
- 10. ♕xc6+ bxc6

17. ... ♕c7?!  
If this variation should go out of use, then it is most probably on account of 17... ♕e6 18. ♘g5 ♕g4 19. ♜e1 ♕c7 20. h3 ♕d7 followed by ♜a6.

- 18. ♕xb4 ♜b8
- 19. ♖c2 ♜xb4
- 20. ♘ce5 ♕d6
- 21. ♘xd7 ♖xd7

Now, thanks to the fixed pawn structure, the Dutch grandmaster obtains the favourable queen + knight tandem and he blocks the position on the light squares.

- 22. b3 ♖e6
- 23. ♘d2 ♜fb8
- 24. ♜ab1 h5
- 25. ♘c4 ♕c7
- 26. ♖d3 g6
- 27. h4 ♖c6
- 28. g3 ♖b7
- 29. ♘d2 ♕d6
- 30. ♜dc1 ♕e7
- 31. ♜c4 ♜b6

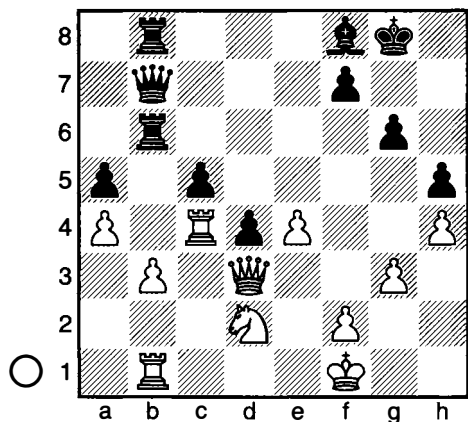


32. ♔f1

The king heads for the queenside, where it is assured of a secure shelter. This undoubtedly good idea demands accurate implementation.

32.f4 ♖d7 33.♔g2 (33.♗f3 ♖h3 34.♔f2) was already quite possible, but this plan may be carried out slightly later.

32. ... ♗f8



33. ♔e2?

An untimely manoeuvre, missing a favourable opportunity to deploy the forces in ideal fashion after 33.f4 ♖d7 34.♔e2 ♖g4+ 35.♖f3.

33. ... ♗e8

34. ♔d1 ♗be6

Statically White's position is still better, but his king comes under a crushing attack. Thus 35.f4 ♗xe4 36.♗xe4 ♗xe4 37.♔c2 ♗e3 is hopeless. There only remains:

35. ♔c2

Now by energetic play the Indian grand-master prevents the white king from leaving the danger zone.

35. ... f5

36. exf5 ♗e2

37. fxg6 ♗h6

38. ♗d1 ♗d5!

The point of the combination. White has become the victim of his several inaccuracies.

39. ♔b1 ♗xf2

40. ♖c2 d3

41. ♖c3 ♗xd2

42. ♗xd2 ♗e1+

43. ♔a2 ♗xd2

44. ♖f6 ♗e2

0-1

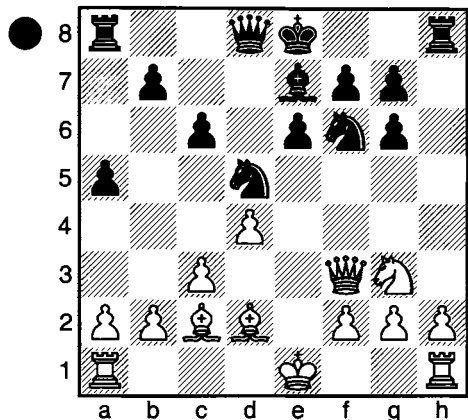
### S.Tiviakov – I.Dorfman

Mondariz (Zonal Tournament) 2000

- |     |         |      |
|-----|---------|------|
| 1.  | e4      | c6   |
| 2.  | d4      | d5   |
| 3.  | ♗d2     | dxe4 |
| 4.  | ♗xe4    | ♗f5  |
| 5.  | ♗g3     | ♗g6  |
| 6.  | ♗c4     | e6   |
| 7.  | ♗1e2    | ♗f6  |
| 8.  | ♗f4     | ♗d6  |
| 9.  | c3      | ♗bd7 |
| 10. | ♖f3     | ♗b6  |
| 11. | ♗b3     | ♗bd5 |
| 12. | ♗xg6    | hxg6 |
| 13. | ♗g5     | ♗e7  |
| 14. | ♗d2     | a5   |
| 15. | ♗c2 (D) |      |

The players have chosen one of the topical variations of the Caro-Kann Defence. This was not the first time it had attracted Tiviakov's attention, not so much due to the advantage of the two bishops (after all, the pawn structure is practically fixed), but because Black still has to solve the difficult

problem of his king, which has no secure shelter. White's last move was a theoretical novelty instead of the traditional 15.a3, which allows strong counterplay on the queenside.

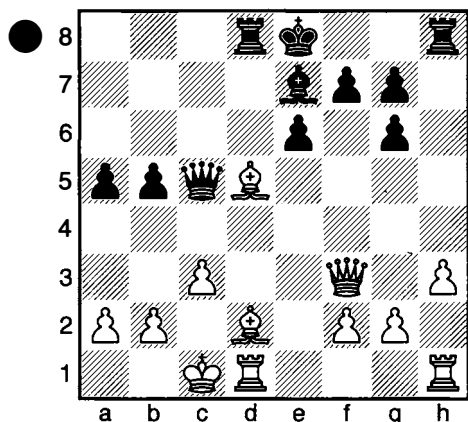


Position after 15. ♖c2

15. ... ♔b6  
 16. 0-0-0 c5

Resolute measures are required, as otherwise Black's position may quickly deteriorate after h2-h4-h5.

17. dxc5 ♔xc5  
 18. ♘e4 ♘xe4  
 19. ♙xe4 ♚d8  
 20. h3 b5  
 21. ♙xd5



The Dutch grandmaster takes the decision to curtail the game, for which it is hard to criticise him.

21. ... ♔xd5  
 22. ♔xd5 ♚xd5  
 23. ♙e3 ♚hh5  
 24. ♚xd5 ♚xd5  
 25. ♚d1 a4

The safest way to equalise.

26. ♚xd5 exd5  
 27. ♙c2 g5  
 28. ♙d3 ♙d7  
 29. g4 g6  
 30. ♙d4 ♙d6  
 31. f3 ½-½





**Taimanov, Najdorf and Dorfman, analyse of the 2nd game  
World championship Karpov-Kasparov, Moscow 1994  
(2 photos)**



## 2. THE EXCHANGE OF MATERIAL

In chess one of the foundation stones of strategy is knowing:

1. For which exchange should I aim?

2. Which pawn structure should I have as my final goal?

In the present chapter the reader's attention is focused on the exchange of queens, which enables one of the static trumps to be raised in value (as a classic example I should mention a queenside pawn majority).

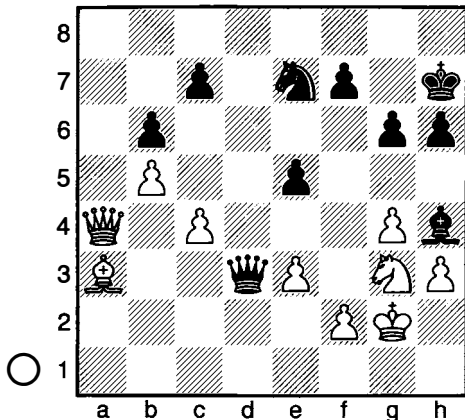
Some examples demonstrate vividly the fundamental link between the exchange of queens and the static position of the king. I would suggest that the reader should return to the analysis of the game Matveeva-Litinskaya (p.46), bearing in mind this argument.

On the other hand, the rule justifying the exchange of **bishop for knight** is presented in depth with various nuances. The reader is invited to work on improving his vision of the **possible evolution of the pawn structure**. After all, in reality only this serves as a reliable criterion when taking a decision over an exchange of minor pieces.

As the French say, knowledge is power.

Let us follow the development of the play in a fragment from the game

**A.Miles – S.Makarychev**  
Oslo 1984



Let us draw up the static evaluation:

$$1. = 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

It gives a minimal static advantage to White. With his last move 31...♔h4 the Russian grandmaster prepared an exchange of minor pieces, aimed at changing the existing balance of forces.

$$32. \quad \text{♙xe7} \quad \text{♜xe7}$$

Let us draw up the evaluation of the new situation. Thus:

$$1. = 2. \pm 3. = 4. =$$

For the pawn structure I give equality, since it is not yet definitely fixed (there is the possibility of f7-f5 and e5-e4).

$$33. \quad \text{♚a2} \quad \text{♞g7}$$

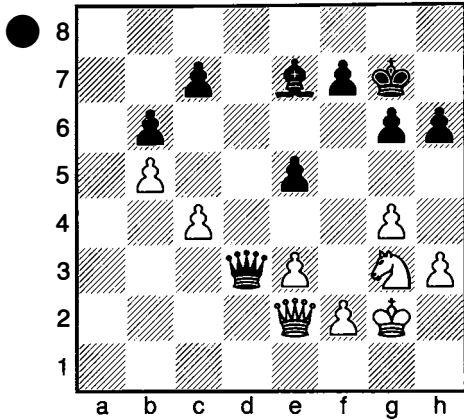
$$34. \quad \text{♚e2 (D)}$$

An important and critical moment. The English grandmaster offers the exchange of queens, since there is no other way of making progress.

$$34. \quad \dots \quad \text{♚b1}$$

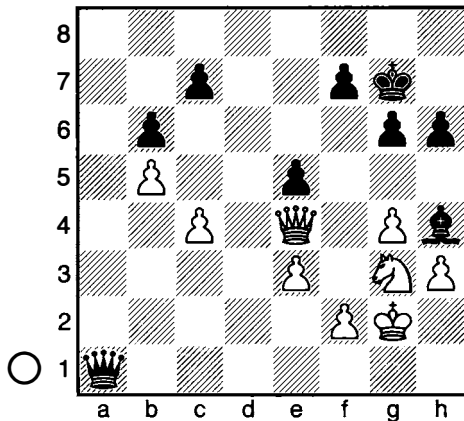
The first step towards the abyss. **The static evaluation demands the exchange of queens.** After 34...♚xe2 35.♜xe2 ♔b4 (in the event of 35...f5 36.gxf5 gxf5 37.♜g3 ♞g6 38.e4 f4 39.♜f5 ♔f6 40.♞f3 h5 41.♞e2 ♔g5 42.♞d3 White prepares to

break through with c4-c5, but 35...♔f6 36.♘c3 ♕e6 37.♘d5 ♔d6 38.♕f3 ♖h4 39.♕e2 ♔c5 was also sufficient) 36.♘g3 ♕f6 37.h4 ♕e6 38.h5 gxh5 Black maintains the dynamic equilibrium.



Position after 34. ♕e2

35. ♕f3      ♖h4  
36. ♕e4      ♕a1?!



An inaccuracy, caused by underestimating the role of static factors. Black should have continued 36...♖xe4+ 37.♘xe4 ♕f8! 38.♘c3? ♕e7 39.♘d5+ ♔d6 with sufficient counterplay.

37. ♘h1!

An unusually fine static manoeuvre, which maintains some advantage for White.

37. ...      ♖b2  
38. ♖c6      ♖b1??

The decisive mistake. Black could still have held the position with a series of precise moves: 38...♖g5! 39.♕f3 ♖c1 40.♘g3 ♖d1+ 41.♕g2 ♖d8 42.♘e4 (or 42.c5 ♖h4 43.♘e4 ♖e7 44.cxb6 cxb6 45.♘c3 ♖d3=) 42...♖e7 43.♖d5 (43.♘c3 ♖d6 44.♖d5 f5 45.♖e6 ♖f6) 43...♖xd5 44.cxd5 f5 45.gxf5 gxf5 46.♘g3 ♕g6 47.e4 fxe4 48.♘xe4 h5=.

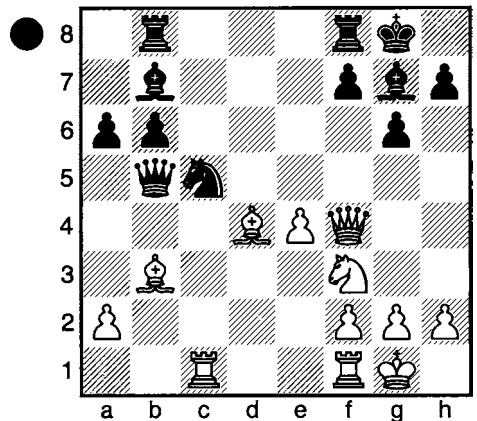
39. ♖xc7

The first gain of material. The outcome of the game is decided.

39...♖e4+ 40.♕h2 h5 41.♖c6 ♖c2 42.gxh5 ♖f5 43.♖g2 ♖xh5 44.c5 bxc5 45.b6 ♖d1 46.♖c6 ♖e7 47.♘g3 c4 48.b7 ♖d6 49.♘e4 ♖b8 50.♖c8 ♖f3 51.♖xb8 ♖xe4 52.♖c7 ♖f3 53.♕g1 ♖d1+ 54.♕g2 ♖d5+ 55.♕g3 1-0

### L. Shamkovich – A. Karpov

39<sup>th</sup> USSR Championship, Leningrad 1971



The static evaluation demands that Black should play for simplification:

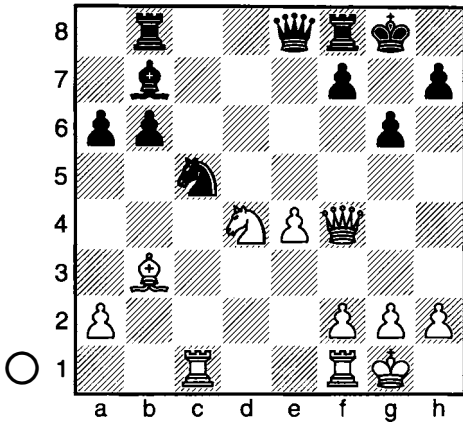
1. ± 2. = 3. ♣ 4. ♣

In the event of the naïve 24...♘b3 25.axb3 ♖xb3 26.♖xg7 ♕xg7 27.♖c7 White gains sufficient compensation for the sacrificed pawn. It is also clear that 24...♘d3 will be met by the drastic reply 25.♖xf7+ ♕h8 26.♖f6. With the static manoeuvre

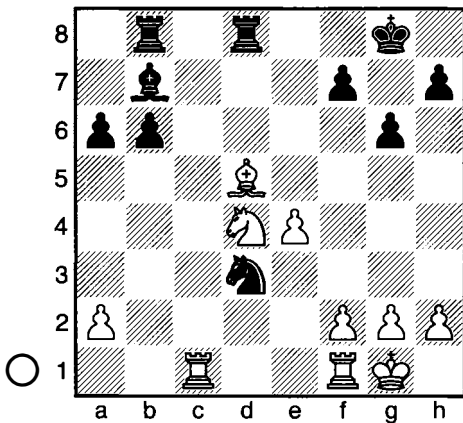
24. ...      ♖xd4

25. ♖xd4 ♔e8!

Karpov forces the transition into an endgame. White loses material after 26.f3 ♖d3 27.♗f6 ♗d8! (if 27...♖xc1 28.♘f5 with perpetual check) 28.♗xd8 ♜fxd8 29.♘c6 ♘xc1 30.♘xd8 ♘xb3 31.♘xb7 ♘d2 32.♞d1 ♘xf3+ 33.gxf3 ♘xb7. 25...♗d3 would have run into 26.♙xf7+.



26. ♙d5 ♖d3  
 27. ♗f6 ♗d8  
 The threat of ♘f5 has to be parried.  
 28. ♗xd8 ♜fxd8



29. ♞cd1

29.♙xb7 ♘xc1 30.♘c6 ♜xb7 31.♘xd8 ♞c7 32.a3 ♘e2+ was completely hopeless for White. 29.♞c6 looks the most tenacious

defence. Now 29...♘b4 does not promise anything in view of 30.♞xb6 ♘xd5 31.exd5 ♙xd5 32.♞xb8 ♞xb8 33.♘b3 ♞e8 34.f3 with equality. In my view the best chance is 29...b5 30.♞b6 ♙xd5 31.♞xb8 ♞xb8 32.exd5 ♘b4 33.♘c6 ♘xc6 34.dxc6 ♞c8 35.♞c1 ♞c7, when despite the simplification White has serious problems.

29. ... ♘f4  
 30. ♘c6

As often happens, everything is decided by one tempo. 30.♙xb7 ♞xb7 31.g3 loses a pawn to 31...♙xd4.

30. ... ♙xc6  
 31. ♙xc6 ♘e2+  
 32. ♖h1 ♘c3  
 33. ♞xd8+ ♞xd8  
 34. ♙d5 ♖f8  
 35. g3 ♘xd5  
 36. ♞d1 ♖e7  
 37. exd5 ♞c8

After a series of forced moves Black has achieved a theoretically won position.

38. ♞d2 ♖d6  
 39. a4 ♞c5  
 40. ♞b2 b5  
 41. axb5 axb5  
 42. ♖g2 ♙xd5  
 43. ♞b4 ♖c6  
 44. ♖f3 ♞c4  
 45. ♞b1 b4  
 46. ♖e3 ♖b5

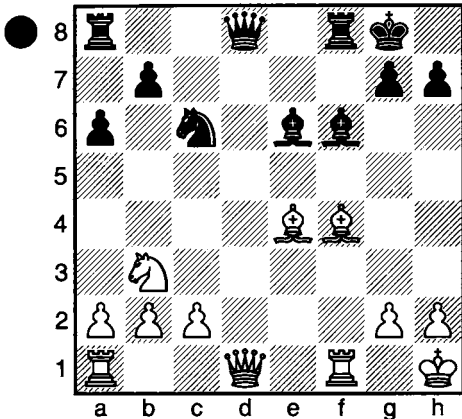
With the white king cut off from the main part of the battlefield, Black easily promotes his pawn.

47. f4 f5  
 48. ♖d2 ♞c6  
 49. ♖d3 ♖a4  
 50. ♞a1+ ♖b3  
 0-1

A.Karpov – V.Anand  
 Buenos Aires 1994

1. e4 c5  
 2. ♘f3 d6  
 3. d4 cxd4  
 4. ♘xd4 ♘f6

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 5.  | ♖c3  | a6   |
| 6.  | ♗e2  | e5   |
| 7.  | ♘b3  | ♗e7  |
| 8.  | 0-0  | 0-0  |
| 9.  | ♗g5  | ♗e6  |
| 10. | f4   | exf4 |
| 11. | ♗xf4 | ♖c6  |
| 12. | ♖h1  | d5   |
| 13. | e5   | ♗e4  |
- To me 13...♗d7 seems sounder.
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 14. | ♗d3  | f5   |
| 15. | exf6 | ♗xf6 |
| 16. | ♗xe4 | dxe4 |
| 17. | ♗xe4 |      |



17. ... ♗c4?

Playing with fire. Black should have simplified the position by 17...♖xd1! 18.♗axd1 ♗c4 19.♗fe1 ♗xb2 20.♗d6 ♗f7 with equality.

18. ♗d6 ♗xf1  
19. ♖d5+

An intermediate move, which radically changes the situation. Black's king comes under the crossfire of the white pieces. The Indian grandmaster had only prepared for 19.♗xf8 ♗xg2+ 20.♗xg2 ♖xf8 21.♖d7 ♖c8.

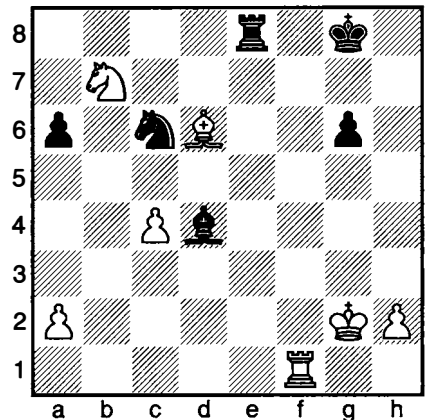
19. ... ♖h8  
20. ♖h5 g6  
21. ♗xg6 ♗xg2+  
22. ♖xg2 ♖d7  
23. ♗c5

White faced a pleasant choice, since after 23.♗xf8!? ♗xf8 24.♗c5 ♖e7 (24...♖g7? 25.♗e6+—) 25.♗e1 ♗e5 26.♖h1 ♗g8 27.♗d3 ♗xg6 (or 27...♖g7 28.♗xe5 ♗xe5 29.♖xh7+ ♖xh7 30.♗xh7 ♗g5 31.♗e4 ♗xb2 32.♗xb7) 28.♗xe5 ♖g7 29.♗d3 he would also have retained the advantage.

23. ... ♖g7  
24. ♗xf8 ♖xg6+  
25. ♖xg6 hxg6  
26. ♗d6

Karpov was probably afraid of allowing Black saving chances after 26.♗f1 ♗xf8 (26...♗xb2 27.♗xb7 ♗e8 28.♗c5) 27.♗d7 ♗f7 28.♗xf6 ♗b4 29.c3 ♗xa2 30.♗e4. I do not see a draw in this ending, although the text move is also pretty strong.

26. ... ♗e8  
27. ♗f1 ♗xb2  
28. ♗xb7 ♖g8  
29. c4 ♗d4



30. ♖g3?

A mistake. After 30.c5! ♗e2+ 31.♖f3 ♗b2 32.♖e4! ♗xb7 33.♖d5 White would have activated his passed pawn.

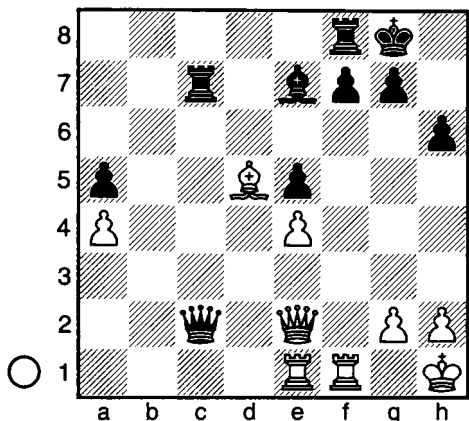
30. ... ♗g7!  
31. ♗b1 ♗e3+  
32. ♖f2

The outcome would also have been a draw after 32.♖f4 ♗h6+ 33.♖g4 ♗e4+.

32. ... ♗d4  
33. ♖f1 ♗f3+

34. ♔e2 ♖c3  
 35. c5 ♙e3!  
 and ½-½ on the 49<sup>th</sup> move.

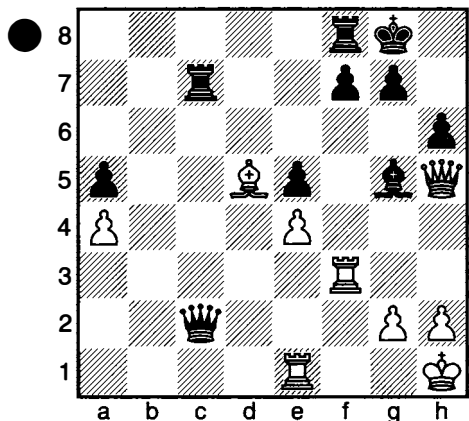
**J.Polgar – L.Ljubojevic**  
 Buenos Aires 1994



30. ♖h5?

A serious mistake for a player of such high standard. **The exchange of queens is intrinsically linked to the static position of the king.** Here is it clearly better for Black. Therefore White should have chosen 30. ♖xc2! ♖xc2 31. ♖c1 ♖c5 (in the event of 31... ♖xc1 32. ♖xc1 White is assured of a draw after the penetration of the rook onto the seventh rank) 32. ♖xc5 ♙xc5 33. ♖c1.

30. ... ♙g5  
 31. ♖f3



31. ... ♙h8!

A manoeuvre which dispels White's illusions, and now it is her king that becomes a target. **A striking illustration of the difference between the static and the dynamic weakness of the king.**

32. ♖ef1

It proves impossible to restore material equality: 32. ♖f7 ♖xf7 33. ♙xf7 ♖f2, or 32. ♙xf7 ♖xe4! 33. ♖ef1 ♖c1. In each of these variations White suffers due to the weakness of the back rank.

32. ... ♙e2!  
 33. h4

33. ♖g4 ♖c2 changes almost nothing compared with the game, but in the event of 33...f5?! 34.exf5 ♖c5 35.f6 (35. ♙e6 ♖d8) 35... ♙xf6 36. ♖e6 ♖c2 37. ♖g1 ♖b2 38. ♖f5 ♖b4 39. ♖g6 White has sufficient counterplay.

33. ... ♙f4  
 34. ♖g4 ♖c2  
 35. h5 ♖d2

Threatening ♖d1.

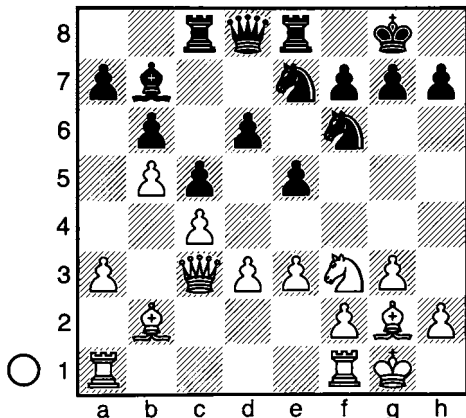
36. ♖xf4 exf4  
 and 0-1 15 moves later.

**V.Kramnik – J.Ehlvest**  
 Vienna 1996

1. ♖f3 ♖f6  
 2. c4 e6  
 3. ♖c3 ♙b4  
 4. ♖c2 0-0  
 5. a3 ♙xc3  
 6. ♖xc3 c5

Black has parted with a bishop early in the game and he now tries to fix the pawn structure as much as possible.

7. b4 b6  
 8. g3 ♖c6  
 9. ♙g2 ♙b7  
 10. 0-0 d6  
 11. ♙b2 e5  
 12. e3 ♖c8  
 13. d3 ♖e8  
 14. b5 ♖e7



15. ♖xe5

Rather surprising and very strong.

15. ... ♔xg2

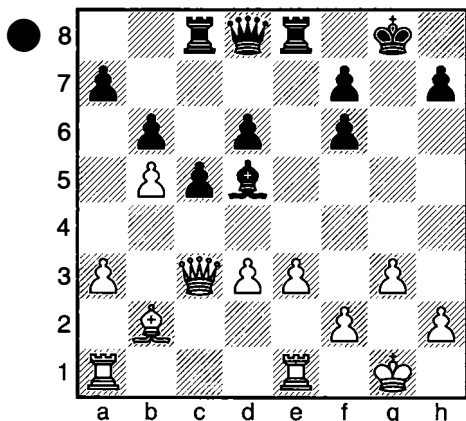
16. ♗g4 ♖ed5

17. ♗xf6+ gx6

18. cxd5 ♔xd5

Perhaps the least of all the evils. White has a powerful initiative after 18...♔xf1 19.♖xf1 c4 20.dxc4 ♖e4 21.♗d3 ♖exc4 22.♗f5 ♗e7 23.e4.

19. ♖f1



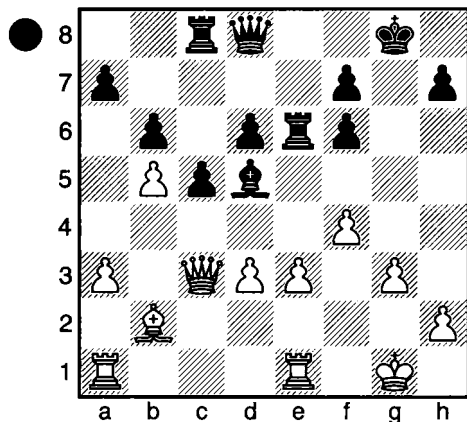
A cunning reply. After the direct win of a pawn 19.♗xf6 ♗xf6 20.♔xf6 ♔f3 Black would have retained drawing chances.

19. ... ♖e6

Here it is completely obvious that Black must aim for the exchange of queens. Therefore it is impossible to recommend 19...♔f3 20.♗c4 ♖e6 (20...♔h5 21.♗h4+–) 21.♗f4 ♔h5 22.e4 when White has an attack.

After 19...♔b7 White has two possibilities:  
A) 20.♗xf6 ♗xf6 21.♔xf6 ♔f3 22.e4, and even with the loss of a tempo Black should be able to hold his defensive lines after 22...d5 (or 22...♖e6) 23.♖e3 dxe4 24.dxe4 ♔xe4 25.♖ae1 ♔e6 26.♖xe4 ♖xf6 27.♖e8+ ♖xe8 28.♖xe8+ ♔g7 29.♖a8 c4 30.♖c8 (30.♖xa7 ♖f5 31.♖c7 ♖xb5 32.♖xc4 ♖b3=) 30...♖f3 31.a4 c3 32.♔f1 ♖d3 33.♔e2 ♖d2+ 34.♔e3 ♖a2 35.♖c4 c2 36.♔d2 h5;  
B) the correct play, as before, is to avoid the exchange of queens after 20.f4 ♖e6 21.f5 ♖e5 22.♗c4 (22.e4 d5 23.♗c1 d4) 22...♖xf5 23.♖f1.

20. f4



20. ... ♔g7?

It was essential to play 20...♔b7 21.f5 ♖e8! (21...♖e5 22.♗c4 ♖xf5 23.♖f1 d5 24.♗h4 ♖xf1+ 25.♖xf1 d4 26.♖xf6) 22.♗xf6 ♗xf6 23.♔xf6 c4, where the main factor becomes the opposite-colour bishops, and not the position of the king.

21. f5 ♖e8

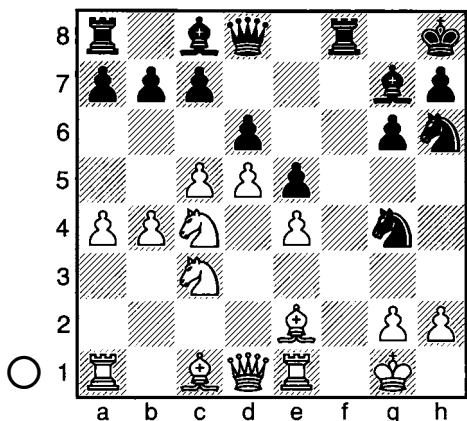
22. ♗d2

Signalling the start of the attack. Black is unable to set up a defensive line.

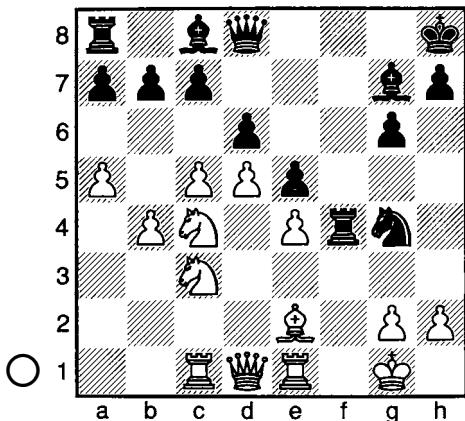
- 22. ... ♖b7
- 23. e4 h6
- 24. ♖f4 d5
- 25. ♖g4+ ♔h7
- 26. ♖h4 ♔g7
- 27. exd5 ♔h7
- 28. ♖e4 ♖xd5
- 29. ♖xf6 1-0

**I. Smirin – Ye Jiangchuan**

Yerevan (Olympiad) 1996



- 18. ... ♖f4
- 18... ♖h4 would only have been pseudo-active in view of 19.g3 ♖h3 20.♖f1.
- 19. a5 ♔g4
- To prevent the development of an enemy attack on his king, Smirin does not hesitate to part with his second bishop too.



- 20. ♖xg4 ♖xg4
- 21. ♖d3 ♖e7

As it seems to me, 21...a6 was rejected because of 22.♔e3 ♖d7 23.c6!.

In the diagram position White's problems seem to be insoluble. His king is in danger, and Black is threatening a direct gain of material after 17...♖h4. If 17.g3, then 17...♔f2 followed by 18...♔h3+ and 19...♔g4, when Black's initiative smoothly transforms into a direct attack. Let us draw up the static evaluation:

1. ♖ 2. = 3. ± 4. ±

Smirin plays dynamically without any prejudices.

17. ♖xh6!

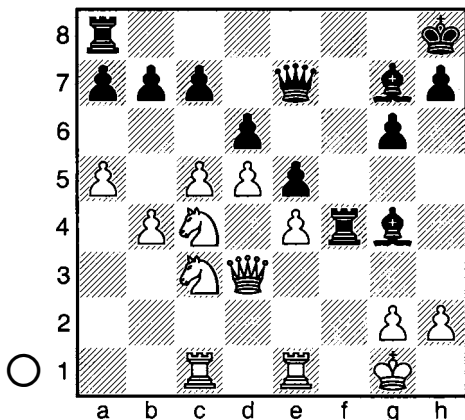
Here the exchange of bishop for knight may be justified by the fact that the pawn structure is fixed.

17. ... ♔xh6

18. ♖c1

Let us see what has happened to the evaluation:

1. = 2. = 3. ± 4. ±



22. cxd6?

White misses the excellent continuation 22.c6!, when it is not easy for Black to find an adequate reply. Thus after 22...b6 23.♔e3 White eliminates an important at-



tacking unit. In the game, however, the Chinese grandmaster acquired a strong initiative at an insignificant cost.

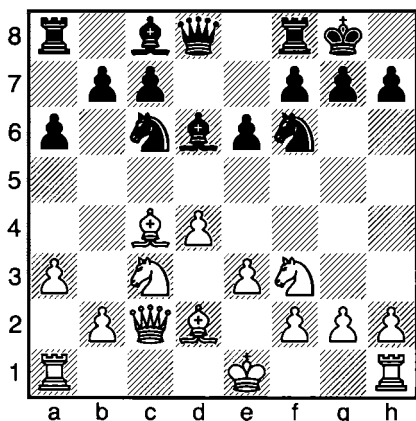
22.	...	cx d6
23.	♘b5	♙h6
24.	♘cxd6	♖af8
25.	h3	♗h4
26.	♖f1	♖f2
27.	♖ce1	♙e2

White loses material, but after a series of mistake by both sides he managed to win on the 42<sup>nd</sup> move.

### M. Gurevich – I. Dorfman

Bundesliga 2001

1.	c4	♘f6
2.	♘c3	e6
3.	♘f3	d5
4.	d4	♙b4
5.	♗a4+	♘c6
6.	e3	0-0
7.	♙d2	a6
8.	a3	♙e7
9.	♗c2	dx c4
10.	♙xc4	♙d6



Black has prepared the freeing advance e6-e5, after which his majority on the queenside will become a serious counter to White's centre. A critical moment in the game.

### 11. ♘e4

Initially I decided that this unfortunate manoeuvre was the consequence of a tactical oversight, which is seen in the note to White's 12<sup>th</sup> move. But in fact White evaluated incorrectly the position with the two bishops after the exchange on d6. Logical to me seems dynamic play, beginning with 11.♘g5. From the following analysis, which of course is not forced, it is apparent that things would have been not at all easy for Black:

A) 11...h6 12.h4:

A1) 12...e5 13.♘d5 g6 14.♘xf7 ♘xf7 15.♘f4+ ♙e8 16.♗xg6+ ♘d7! (16...♙e7 17.♗g7+ ♙e8 18.♘g6 ♗d7 19.♗xh6 ♗f5 20.♘xf8 ♙xf8 21.♗g5 exd4 22.exd4 ♘xd4 23.0-0±) 17.♘e6 ♖g8 18.♗xh6 ♗e7 19.♘g5 ♗g7 20.♗xg7+ ♖xg7 21.dxe5 ♘xe5 22.♙e2±;

A2) 12...hxg5 13.hxg5;

B) 11...e5 12.♘d5 g6 13.♘xf6+ ♗xf6 14.♘e4 ♗h4 15.d5 ♘e7 16.g3 ♗h3 17.♙f1 ♗f5 18.g4 ♗f3 19.♖g1 f5 20.♘g5 ♗xd5 21.♙c4+.

### 11. ... e5

Black fails to solve his problems with 11...♘xe4 12.♗xe4 ♖e8 13.♙c3.

### 12. ♘xd6

Black's counterattack is based on the variation 12.dxe5 ♘xe5 13.♘xe5 ♙xe5 14.♙b4 ♙f5 (14...♖e8 15.♖d1 ♙d7 16.♘g5) 15.♙xf8 ♘xe4 16.♙d3 ♘xf2 17.♙xf5 ♘xh1 18.♙b4 ♗h4+.

### 12. ... cx d6

### 13. ♙c3 e4

### 14. d5

White prefers to go down fighting than to suffer endlessly after 14.♘d2 d5 15.♙e2 ♙g4 16.f3 ♙h5 17.0-0 ♖e8 18.♖ae1 exf3 19.♙xf3 ♙g6 20.♗b3 ♗d7. In view of the fixed pawn structure, his bishop pair can in no way be regarded as a static advantage.

### 14. ... ♘a5

### 15. ♙a2 exf3

### 16. gx f3 b5

### 17. ♖g1 ♘c4

- |     |       |       |
|-----|-------|-------|
| 18. | 0-0-0 | ♖e8   |
| 19. | b3    | ♖e5   |
| 20. | f4    | ♖f3   |
| 21. | ♖g3   | ♖h4   |
| 22. | ♖dg1  | g6    |
| 23. | ♖d3   | ♖e7   |
| 24. | ♙b1   | ♖g7   |
| 25. | e4    | ♖h5   |
| 26. | ♖e3   | ♖xg3  |
| 27. | hxg3  | ♖f5   |
| 28. | exf5  | ♖xe3+ |
| 29. | fxe3  | ♙xf5  |
| 30. | ♙xf5  | gxf5  |
| 31. | g4    | f6    |
| 32. | g5    | ♙f7   |
| 33. | gxf6  | ♖g8   |
| 34. | ♖h1   | ♙g6   |

In severe time trouble Black misses a simple win. Interposing 34...♖ac8 would have enabled his king to acquire a safe shelter after 35.♙d2 ♖g2+ 36.♙d3 ♙g6 37.f7 ♖f8 38.♙b4 ♖xf7 39.♖c1 h5 40.♖c6 h4 41.♖xd6+ ♙h5.

- |     |       |       |
|-----|-------|-------|
| 35. | f7    | ♙xf7  |
| 36. | ♖xh7+ | ♙g6   |
| 37. | ♖h1   | ♖ac8  |
| 38. | ♙d2   | ♖c5   |
| 39. | ♙d4   | ♖c7   |
| 40. | ♙d3   | ♖cc8  |
| 41. | e4    | fxe4+ |
| 42. | ♙xe4  | ♖ce8+ |
| 43. | ♙f3   | ♖ef8  |
| 44. | ♙e4   | ½-½   |

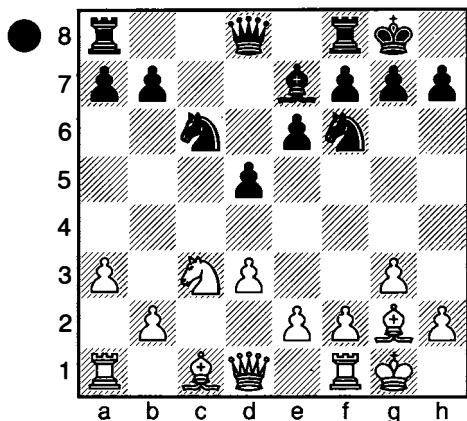
**L.Aronian – D.Pavasovic**  
Vidmar Memorial Tournament,  
Portoroz 1999

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 1. | ♖f3  | d5   |
| 2. | g3   | ♙g4  |
| 3. | ♙g2  | c6   |
| 4. | c4   | e6   |
| 5. | cxd5 | ♙xf3 |

As far as I am aware, this deep strategic idea belongs to Yefim Geller. White obtains the two bishops, but it is not easy for

him to achieve a favourable change in the pawn structure. Playing e2-e4 weakens his king and a whole complex of light squares, but without it progress is practically impossible.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 6.  | ♙xf3 | cxd5 |
| 7.  | 0-0  | ♖c6  |
| 8.  | ♖c3  | ♖f6  |
| 9.  | d3   | ♙e7  |
| 10. | a3   | 0-0  |
| 11. | ♙g2  |      |



11. ... ♖c8

I would have been more inclined to develop with 11...♖d7 12.♙d2 ♖fc8 or 11...a6 12.♙d2 (12.b4 b5) 12...b5.

12. ♙d2 ♖d7

Here too 12...♖d7 was perfectly sound.

13. ♖c1 ♙g5  
14. e3 a6

A critical point. Black can initiate play on the dark squares. Here this is not clear-cut, since White gains more opportunities to modify the pawn structure. Here are some sample variations:

- 14...d4 15.♖e4 ♙e7 (15...dxe3 16.fxe3 ♙e7 17.b4):  
A) 16.exd4 ♖xd4 17.♖xc8 ♖xc8:  
A1) 18.♖a4 ♖c6 19.♖c1 ♖b6 (19...f5 20.♙g5 ♖d8 21.♙xe7 ♖xe7 22.♖d2 ♖b6 23.♖b5±) 20.♖b5 ♖d8 21.♙e3=;

A2) 18.♔e3 ♘f5 (18...♘c2 19.♔xa7 b6 20.d4±) 19.♔xa7 b6 20.♖a4 ♗c7 21.d4 ♘f6 22.♘c3 ♘xd4 23.♗xd4 ♗xa7=;

B) 16.b4 ♗b6 17.♗c2:

B1) 17...♗fd8 18.exd4 ♘f6 (18...♗xd4 19.♔c3 ♗b6 20.♗b2 e5 21.♗fe1±) 19.♔e3 ♘d5 20.♘c5 ♔f6 21.♗c4 ♘ce7 22.♗fe1 ♗c7 23.♗b3±;

B2) 17...♗cd8! 18.♘c5 ♔xc5 (18...♘c5 19.bxc5 ♗a6 20.♗b1 dxe3 21.♔xe3 ♗xd3 22.♗e2=) 19.bxc5 ♗a6 20.♗b1 ♘de5 21.♗fd1 ♗d7 22.♗b3=.

15. b4 ♗e7  
16. ♗c2 ♗fd8  
17. ♗b1 d4

Here Black's counterplay is too late and it leads to a deterioration of his position.

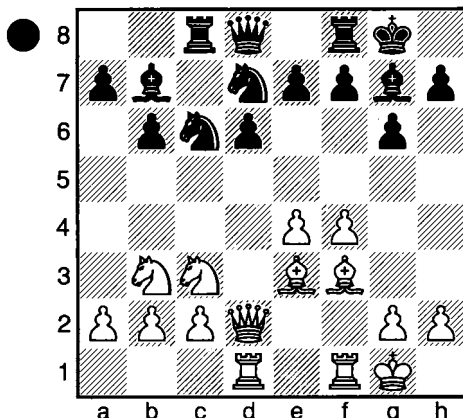
18.♘e4 dxe3 19.fxe3 ♔h6 20.♘f2 ♘b6 21.♘g4 ♔g5 22.h4 f5 23.hxg5 fxg4 24.g6 hxg6 25.d4 ♘d5 26.♗c5 ♘h7 27.♔e4 ♗g5 28.♗f2 ♗e7 29.♔xg6+ ♘h8 30.♗e4 ♘f6 31.♗h1+ ♘g8 32.♗h5 1-0

## V.Gurevich – T.Bosboom Llançava

Cappelle la Grande 2002

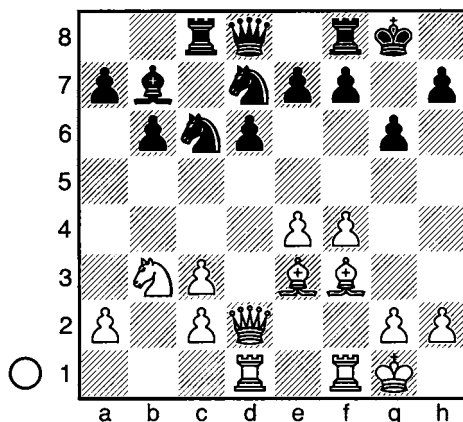
1. e4 c5  
2. ♘f3 ♘c6  
3. d4 cxd4  
4. ♘xd4 g6  
5. ♘c3 ♔g7  
6. ♔e3 ♘f6  
7. ♘b3 0-0  
8. ♔e2 b6  
9. 0-0 ♔b7  
10. f4 d6  
11. ♔f3 ♘d7  
12. ♗d2 ♗c8  
13. ♗ad1 (D)

A normal position from the Dragon Variation has been reached. Instead of this last developing move, little is promised by 13.♘d4 ♘xd4 14.♔xd4 e5 15.fxe5 ♘xe5.



Position after 13.♗ad1

13. ... ♘c5



The possession of the d5 outpost ensures White a static advantage. The unfavourable tendency can be changed by the exchange 13...♔xc3 14.bxc3 (after 14.♗xc3 ♘ce5 White will be unable to solve the resulting problems).

14. ♗f2

Black has good chances of maintaining equality after 14.♘d4 ♘xd4 15.♔xd4 ♔h6 16.♗e3 ♗e8 17.e5 ♔xf3 18.♗xf3 (18.♗xf3 ♘e6 19.exd6 ♘xd4 20.♗xd4 exd6 21.♗d2 ♔g7 22.♗xd6 ♔xc3 23.♗xc3 ♗xc3 24.♗xc3 ♗a4=) 18...dxe5 19.♔xe5 f6

20.♙d4 ♘e6 21.♙e3 f5 22.♚fe1 ♖f7  
 23.♗d5 ♗c6 24.♗b3 ♗c4 25.♗a3 ♙xf4  
 26.♙xf4 ♗xf4 27.♗xa7 ♗c7=.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 14. | ...  | ♗c7  |
| 15. | ♘d5  | ♗b8  |
| 16. | ♘d4  | ♚ce8 |
| 17. | ♗h4  | f6   |
| 18. | c4   | e6   |
| 19. | ♘c3  | a6   |
| 20. | ♘de2 | ♙a8  |

White has consolidated his position and is ready to exploit all the advantages of his central outpost, but for some reason his play loses its logical directivity.

21. ♗f2

21.b3 b5 22.cxb5 axb5 23.a4 bxa4 24.bxa4 ♗b4 25.♗f2±.

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 21. | ... | ♚c8 |
| 22. | b3  |     |

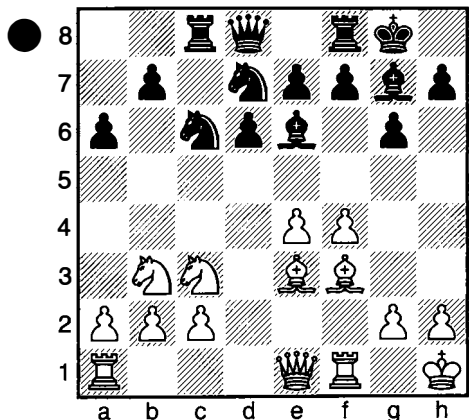
22.a3 ♘e7 23.♗h4 ♚fe8 24.b4 ♘d7  
 25.♗h3 ♘c6 (25...♘f8 26.♘a4±) 26.♚c1  
 a5 27.b5 ♘d8 28.♘a4 ♗c7 29.♚fd1 ♘f7  
 (29...♘b7 30.f5±) 30.♘d4±.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 22. | ...  | ♚fe8 |
| 23. | h4   | ♘e7  |
| 24. | ♘d4  | e5   |
| 25. | fxe5 | dxe5 |
| 26. | ♘de2 | f5   |
| 27. | ♙xc5 | ½-½  |

**D.Barua – P.Konguvel**

Calcutta 2002

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | e4   | c5   |
| 2.  | ♘f3  | d6   |
| 3.  | d4   | cxd4 |
| 4.  | ♘xd4 | ♘f6  |
| 5.  | ♘c3  | g6   |
| 6.  | ♙e2  | ♙g7  |
| 7.  | 0-0  | 0-0  |
| 8.  | ♙e3  | ♘c6  |
| 9.  | ♘b3  | ♙e6  |
| 10. | f4   | ♚c8  |
| 11. | ♖h1  | a6   |
| 12. | ♙f3  | ♘d7  |
| 13. | ♗e1  |      |



Here we see an arrangement of the forces that is similar to the previous example.

13. ... b5

Black disregards the idea of exchanging minor pieces by 13...♙xc3. There can follow 14.bxc3 ♙c4 15.♚f2 ♗c7 16.♘d2 ♘a5 with a promising game.

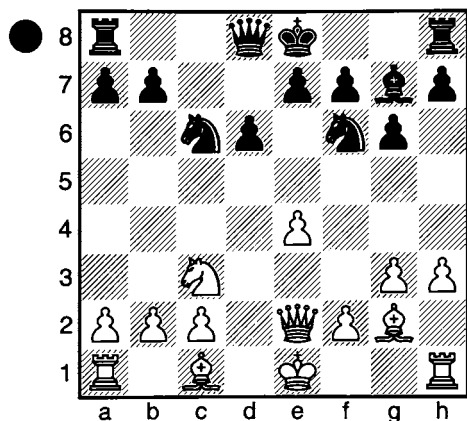
14.♚d1 b4 15.♘d5 ♙xb2 16.e5 ♙xd5  
 17.♙xd5 e6 18.♙c4 d5 19.♙xa6 ♚b8  
 20.♚f3 ♗e7 21.♙f2 ♙c3 22.♗e2 f6  
 23.♙h4 ♗f7 24.♙b5 ♚bc8 25.a4 fxe5  
 26.fxe5 ♗g7 27.♚xf8+ ♗xf8 28.♚f1 ♗h6  
 29.♗g4 ♘f8 30.♙xc6 ♚xc6 31.♙e7 ♘d7  
 32.♙d6 g5 33.♘d4 ♙xd4 34.♗xd4 ♗g7  
 35.♗xb4 ♚xc2 36.a5 ♗f7 37.♗e1 ♗h5  
 38.h3 ♚a2 39.♗c1 ♗e8 40.♗xg5+ ♖h8  
 41.♙c7 ♚c2 42.♙d8 d4 43.♙f6+ ♘xf6  
 44.♗xf6+ ♖g8 45.♚f4 h5 46.♗g5+ ♖h8  
 47.♚f6 1-0

**V.Jansa – I.Dorfman**

Vienna 2002

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 1. | e4   | c5   |
| 2. | ♘f3  | d6   |
| 3. | d4   | ♘f6  |
| 4. | ♘c3  | cxd4 |
| 5. | ♘xd4 | g6   |
| 6. | g3   | ♘c6  |
| 7. | ♙g2  | ♙g4  |
| 8. | ♘de2 | ♙g7  |
| 9. | h3   | ♙xe2 |

10. ♖xe2

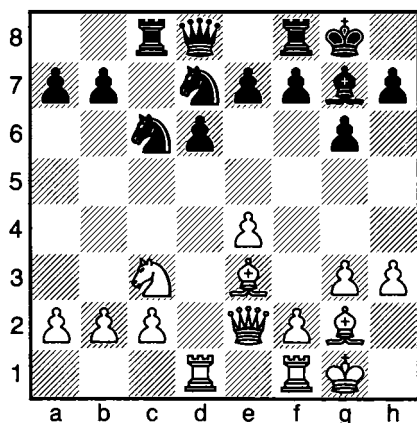


How to understand and correctly evaluate the events that occurred in the game? Afterwards my opponent unequivocally condemned Black's strategy. His opinion may also be shared by other players. After all, White has the bishop pair and an outpost at d5. I cannot contest this, but it seemed to me that White would be unable to complete his queenside development without worsening his position in the process.

10. ... ♜c8

It should not be forgotten that Black is playing for dynamics and that on no account should be allow 11. ♘d5.

11. 0-0 0-0  
 12. ♙e3 ♘d7  
 13. ♜ad1



13. ... ♙xc3

The logical completion of the preceding strategy. From now on it will be impossible for White to improve his pawn structure and his only chance consists in play against the king.

14. bxc3 ♖a5  
 15. h4 ♖xc3  
 16. h5 ♘de3  
 17. ♙h3

It is essential to interpose this move, since after 17.f4 ♖c4 the game concludes without even having begun.

17. ... ♜c7  
 18. f4 ♘c4  
 19. ♜d3

Played in the hope of activating the dark-square bishop, since after 19. ♙f2 b5 (19... ♘b4 20. ♙e1 ♖xc2 21. ♖f3 ♖b2 22. hxg6 hxg6 23. ♜f2 ♘c2 24. ♙c3 ♖b6) 20. ♜d3 ♖g7 Black's advantage becomes irreversible.

19. ... ♖g7  
 20. ♙c1

20. ♙f2 b5±.

20. ... ♘b4

The decisive blow! The knight threatens to break through to a2, eliminating the dark-square bishop and win it White's last hopes.

21. e5 dxе5  
 22. ♜d7 ♜xd7  
 23. ♙xd7 ♘b6  
 24. ♙h3

Equally hopeless was 24.h6 ♖xh6 25.fxe5 ♖g7 26. ♙g4 (26. ♙h3 ♘c6 27. ♙b2 ♖h6) 26... ♘c6 27. ♙b2 ♘a4 28. ♙a1 ♖h6 29.e6 f6.

24. ... exf4  
 25. ♙xf4 ♘4d5  
 26. ♙e5 ♖h6  
 27. ♙d4 ♖g5

27... ♖xh5 would perhaps have been more accurate: 28. ♖xh5 gxh5 29. ♜f5 ♜d8 30. ♜g5+ ♘f8 31. ♙g7+ ♘e8 32. ♖xh5 e6 33. ♖xh7 ♘e7±.

28. ♖f3 ♘f6  
 29. hxg6 hxg6  
 30. ♙e1 ♖d2

And here Black would have won more quickly by 30...♖d8 31.♗xb6 axb6 32.♗xe7 ♗c5+ 33.♗e3 ♗xc2 34.♗xb7 ♖d3 35.♗f4 ♗d1+.

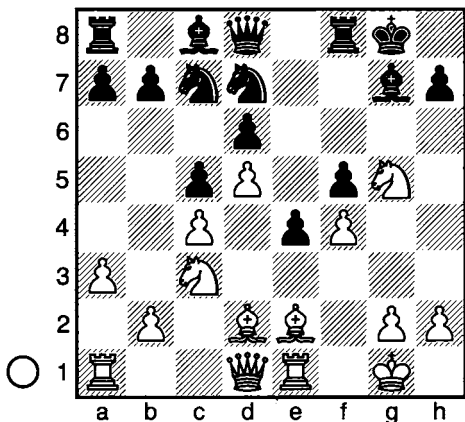
- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 31. | ♗f2  | ♗xf2+ |
| 32. | ♗xf2 | ♖d8   |
| 33. | c3   |       |

The best practical chance was undoubtedly 33.♗xb6 axb6 34.♗xe7 ♖d2+ 35.♗g1 ♗xc2 36.♗xb7 ♗e4 (36...♗xa2 37.♗xb6) 37.a4 ♗xg3 38.♗xb6 ♗e2+ 39.♗f1 ♗f4 40.♗d7 ♖a2 41.♗f6 ♖a1+ 42.♗f2 ♗d3+ 43.♗e2 ♗e5 44.♗b5 ♖a2+ 45.♗e1 ♗g7f. 33...♗bd5 34.a4 b6 35.♗f1 ♖d6 36.a5 ♗d7 37.axb6 axb6 38.♗f3 e5 39.♗g1 ♗xc3 40.♗c1 ♗d5 41.♗c8+ ♗g7 42.♗b5 ♗7f6 43.♗c4 ♖d8 44.♗c6 ♗e7 45.♗e4 ♗f5 46.♗xb6 ♗xe4 47.♗xe4 ♗xg3+ 48.♗xe5 f6+ 49.♗f4 ♖d3 50.♗c8 ♗h5+ 51.♗e4 ♖d7 52.♗c5 ♗g3+ 53.♗f4 ♗f5 54.♗f8+ ♗f7 55.♗c5 ♗e7 56.♗g4 0-1

Let us now look at some examples from games by the great players.

**D.Bronstein – T.Petrosian**

Amsterdam (Candidates Tournament) 1956

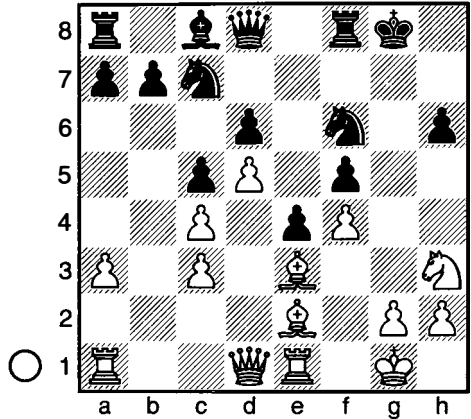


The static evaluation demonstrates White's superiority:

1. ± 2. = 3. ± 4. ±

He can prepare g2-g4 with the series of manoeuvres ♗c1, ♗d1-e3, ♗c3 and ♗h3-f2. Bronstein's direct play allows his opponent to disrupt the unfavourable trend.

- |     |       |      |
|-----|-------|------|
| 16. | ♗e3?! | h6   |
| 17. | ♗h3   | ♗xc3 |
| 18. | bxc3  | ♗f6  |



A series of forced moves has led to a critical position, demanding that we again draw up the static evaluation:

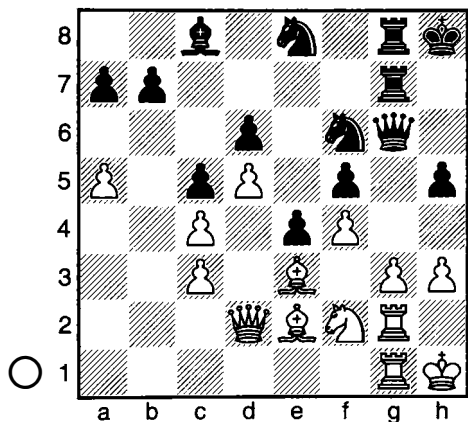
1. ♖ 2. ♖ 3. = 4. ♖

White goes onto the defensive and Petrosian develops his game without the slightest hindrance.

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 19. | a4  | ♗h8 |
| 20. | ♗f2 | ♗g8 |
| 21. | ♗h1 | ♗e8 |
| 22. | ♗g1 | ♗g6 |
| 23. | ♗d2 | ♗d7 |
| 24. | g3  |     |

The spark of activity is doomed to failure, as it seen from the variation 24.♗ab1 b6 25.a5 bxa5 26.♗b7 ♗ce8.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 24. | ...  | ♗ae8 |
| 25. | a5   | ♗e7  |
| 26. | ♗ab1 | ♗c8  |
| 27. | ♗g2  | ♗eg7 |
| 28. | ♗bg1 | ♗ce8 |
| 29. | h3   | h5   |

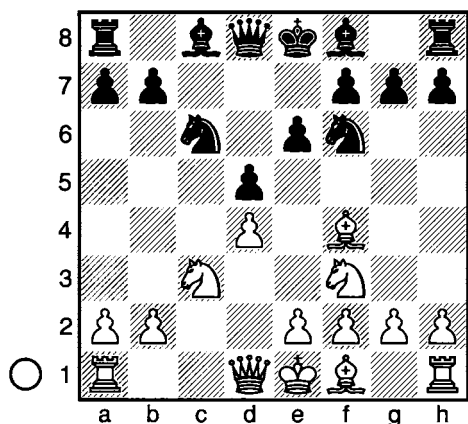


In the final position Black's resources are not yet exhausted. He can improve the placing of his pieces by  $\text{♞f6-g8-h6}$  and  $\text{♜e8-f6}$ , preparing  $\text{h5-h4}$ .

Nevertheless, for some reason Petrosian decided to offer a draw.

### T. Petrosian – M. Botvinnik

Training Game, Voronovo 1952



After the initial moves of the Slav Defence Exchange Variation, White is faced with a problem. In the resulting critical position he has to make up his mind regarding a possible exchange of minor pieces. The static evaluation suggests an insignificant advantage to White:

1. = 2. = 3. = 4.  $\pm$

Because of the pawn formation, Black's queen's bishop is passive. Typical play would consist of  $7.\text{♞c1 } \text{♙d6 } 8.\text{♙g3}$  followed by  $\text{e2-e3}$ ,  $\text{♙d3}$ ,  $\text{♞e5}$  and  $\text{f2-f4}$ .

7.  $\text{e3?! } \text{♞h5}$

Black eliminates the active bishop and the evaluation tips in his favour. From now on the situation demands dynamic action of White, but it is not easy for him to exploit his opponent's slight lag in development. For example, if  $8.\text{♙b5}$  there follows  $8...\text{♞xf4 } 9.\text{exf4 } \text{♙d6}$ , while after  $8.\text{♙e5}$  both  $8...\text{♙e7}$  and  $8...\text{f6}$  are correct. At the end of a series of forced moves White ends up in a strategically difficult position.

8.  $\text{♙g5 } \text{♞b6}$

9.  $\text{a3 } \text{h6}$

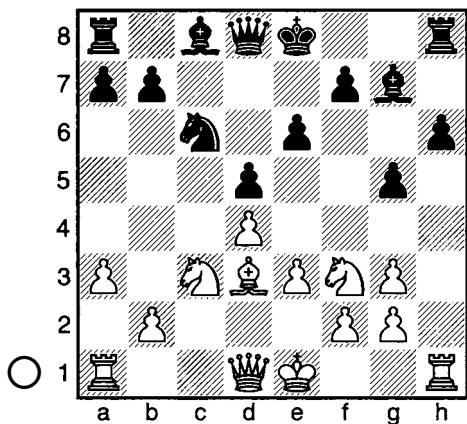
10.  $\text{♙h4 } \text{g5}$

11.  $\text{♙g3 } \text{♞xg3}$

12.  $\text{hxg3 } \text{♙g7}$

Now, naturally, the world champion will use static means.

13.  $\text{♙d3 } \text{♞d8}$



14.  $\text{♞h2?}$

Petrosian did not see that this was a critical position! Otherwise he would undoubtedly have tried the **dynamic resource**  $14.\text{♙b5 } \text{♙d7 } 15.\text{♙xc6 } \text{♙xc6 } 16.\text{♞e5 } \text{♙xe5 } 17.\text{dxe5 } \text{d4 } 18.\text{♞xd4 } \text{♙xg2 } 19.\text{♞h2 } \text{♙f3 } 20.\text{♞e4 } \text{♞xd4 } 21.\text{♞f6+ } \text{♞e7 } 22.\text{exd4 } \text{♞ad8 } 23.\text{♞d2 } \text{♞xd4+ } 24.\text{♞e3 } \text{♞d1 } 25.\text{♞xd1 } \text{♙xd1 } 26.\text{♞h1}$

♙a4 27. ♖xh6, equalising, or 14.g4, preventing a modification of the pawn structure.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 14. | ...  | h5   |
| 15. | ♖c1  | ♙d7  |
| 16. | ♘b5  | ♙f8  |
| 17. | ♘f1  | g4   |
| 18. | ♘d2  | e5   |
| 19. | ♙b3  | exd4 |
| 20. | ♘xd4 | ♘xd4 |
| 21. | exd4 | ♙e7+ |
| 22. | ♙d1  | ♙xd4 |
| 23. | ♖c7  | ♙b6  |
| 24. | ♖e1  | ♙d6  |
| 25. | ♖xb7 | ♖h6  |
| 26. | ♙b5  | ♙e6  |

White's belated attempts to active his pieces merely lead to the complete collapse of his statically inferior position.

- |     |       |      |
|-----|-------|------|
| 27. | f4    | gxf3 |
| 28. | ♘xf3  | ♖c8  |
| 29. | ♘e5   | ♙c5  |
| 30. | ♖xf7+ | ♙g8  |
| 31. | ♖f3   | ♙c1+ |
| 32. | ♙e2   | ♖c2+ |
| 33. | ♙f1   | ♙d2  |
|     | 0-1   |      |

Here, thanks to the backward c7 pawn, White has a slight static superiority:

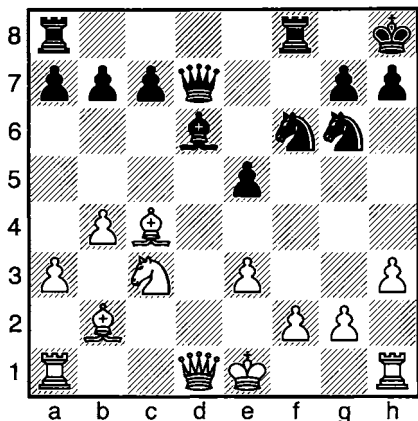
1. = 2. = 3. = 4. ±

With his last move 13. ♘g5 Botvinnik plans a favourable exchange by 14. ♘ge4. The opponent's inappropriate reply allows him to carry out his intention in an even more advantageous situation.

13. ... ♘g6?

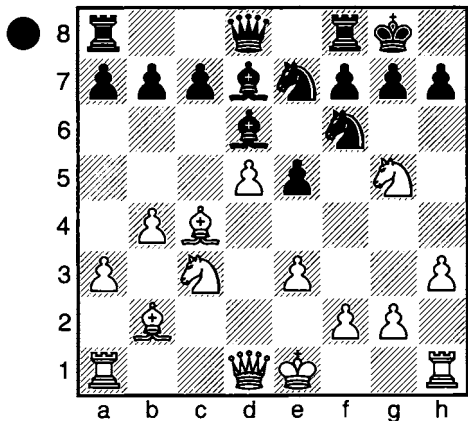
In my view, only 13...h6 would have allowed Black to maintain the balance.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 14. | ♘e6  | fxe6 |
| 15. | dxe6 | ♙h8  |
| 16. | exd7 | ♙xd7 |



M.Botvinnik – M.Tal

Moscow (m/3), 1961



The static evaluation has become catastrophic for Black:

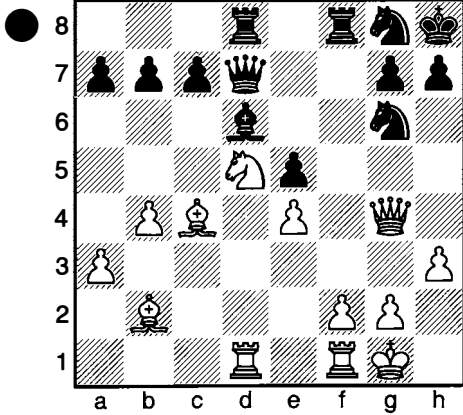
1. ± 2. ± 3. ± 4. ±

- |     |         |      |
|-----|---------|------|
| 17. | 0-0     | ♙f5  |
| 18. | ♘d5     | ♘g8  |
| 19. | ♙g4     | ♙c2  |
| 20. | ♙e2     | ♙f5  |
| 21. | ♙g4     | ♙c2  |
| 22. | ♙e2     | ♙f5  |
| 23. | e4      | ♙d7  |
| 24. | ♖ad1    | ♖ad8 |
| 25. | ♙g4 (D) | ♙e8  |

The threat of the queen exchange forces new concessions.

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 26. | g3  | ♘h6  |
| 27. | ♙h5 | ♘g8  |
| 28. | ♙e2 | ♘6e7 |
| 29. | ♘e3 | ♘h6  |





Position after 25. ♖g4

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 30. | ♗g4  | ♗xg4 |
| 31. | hxg4 | ♖c6  |
| 32. | ♔g2  | ♗e7  |
| 33. | ♗d5  | ♗d4  |

Desperation. The presence of opposite-colour bishops merely makes Black's defence more difficult.

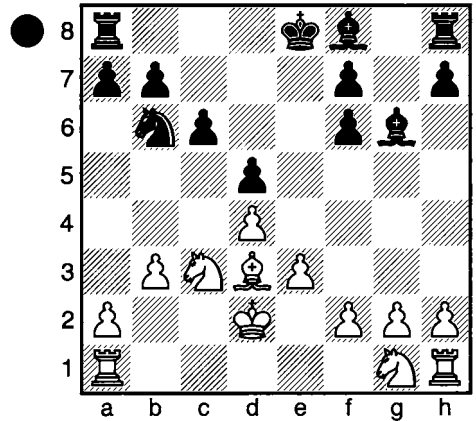
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 34. | ♗xd4 | exd4 |
| 35. | ♗c4  | c5   |
| 36. | b5   | ♗f6  |
| 37. | f4   | d3   |
| 38. | ♗xd3 | ♗xd3 |
| 39. | ♗xd3 | ♗d4  |
| 40. | e5   | g6   |
| 41. | ♗h1  | ♗g7  |
| 42. | ♗e4  | b6   |
| 43. | ♗c4  | 1-0  |

Queen's Gambit, analysis

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | d4   | d5   |
| 2.  | c4   | e6   |
| 3.  | ♖c3  | ♗f6  |
| 4.  | cxd5 | exd5 |
| 5.  | ♗g5  | c6   |
| 6.  | e3   | ♗f5  |
| 7.  | ♗f3  | ♗g6  |
| 8.  | ♗xf6 | ♗xf6 |
| 9.  | ♗xf6 | gxf6 |
| 10. | ♔d2  | ♗d7  |

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 11. | ♗d3 | ♗b6 |
| 12. | b3  |     |

The end of a series of forced moves signals the existence of a critical position. The pawn structure is fixed and therefore the knights are dominant.



The static evaluation gives an advantage to White:

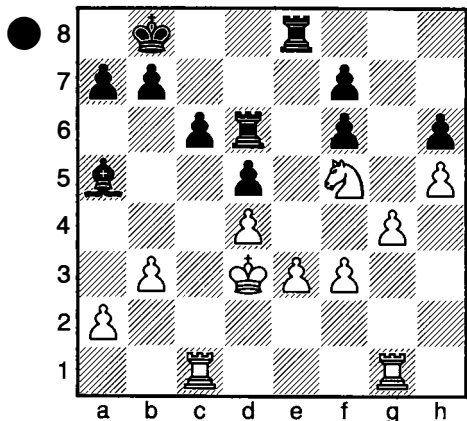
$$1. = 2. \pm 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

After 12...♗c8 13.♗ge2 ♗d6 14.g4 f5 15.gxf5 ♗xf5 16.♗ag1 ♗d7 17.♗xf5+ ♗xf5 18.♗g4 White stands better.

**Dynamic play consists in the exchange of the king's bishop for the knight at c3.** Then the bishops are eliminated on the b1-h7 diagonal and the black knight goes to an ideal post at d6. I suggest two interpretations of this idea.

12...♗b4 13.♗ge2 ♗c8 14.h4 ♗d6 15.h5 ♗xd3 16.♗xd3 ♗xc3 17.♗xc3 ♗g8 18.♗ag1 f5 19.f3 (19.♗e2? ♗e4) 19...h6 20.♗e2 (20.♗e2 ♗d7 21.♗f4 a5) 20...♗d7 21.♗f2 ♗g5 22.♗e2 a5 with equality; 12...♗a3! 13.♗ge2 ♗d7.

The reader can see the catastrophic consequences of the static play after 13...♗c8 14.f3 ♗d6 15.g4 0-0-0 16.h4 ♗he8 17.♗f4 ♗b4 18.♗ac1 ♗b8 19.h5 ♗xd3 20.♗xd3 h6 21.♗hg1 ♗a5 22.♗ce2 ♗e7 23.♗g3 ♗de8 24.♗g2 ♗g8 25.♗h4 ♗ge8 26.♗hf5 ♗e6 27.♗xd6 ♗xd6 28.♗f5 in the following diagram:



14. ♖g3 ♜c8 15. h4 ♜d6 16. h5 ♙xd3  
 17. ♜xd3 ♙b2 18. ♖ab1 ♙xc3 19. ♜xc3  
 ♖hg8 20. ♜d3 a5 21. a4 f5!. The position is equal, as was demonstrated by the game Gulko-Short, New York (m/2) 1994.

**J.Karr – M.Golan**  
 French Cup 2000

- |    |     |       |
|----|-----|-------|
| 1. | d4  | ♜f6   |
| 2. | c4  | e6    |
| 3. | ♜c3 | ♙b4   |
| 4. | ♚c2 | 0-0   |
| 5. | a3  | ♙xc3+ |

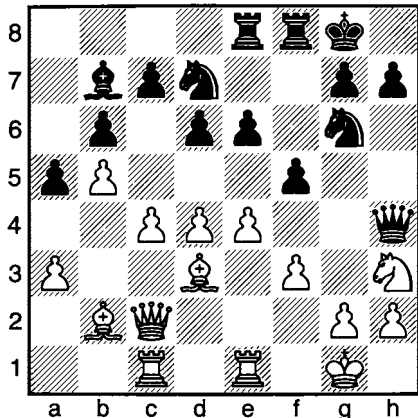
At an early stage of the game Black concedes the bishop pair, hoping later to fix the pawn structure.

- |     |      |     |
|-----|------|-----|
| 6.  | ♚xc3 | ♜e4 |
| 7.  | ♚c2  | f5  |
| 8.  | ♜h3  | b6  |
| 9.  | f3   | ♜f6 |
| 10. | e3   | ♙b7 |
| 11. | ♙e2  |     |

11. ♙d3 was perhaps more promising.

- |     |     |       |
|-----|-----|-------|
| 11. | ... | ♜c6!? |
| 12. | b4  | a5    |
| 13. | b5  | ♜e7   |
| 14. | 0-0 | ♜g6   |
| 15. | ♙b2 | ♚e7   |

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 16. | ♙d3  | ♖ae8 |
| 17. | ♖ac1 | d6   |
| 18. | ♖fel | ♜d7  |
| 19. | e4   | ♚h4  |



**20. ♖e2?**

A dubious decision. White should have avoided the fixing of the pawn structure by 20. exf5 exf5 21. ♚f2 ♚f6 22. ♖e2 (22. ♖cd1 ♜h8 23. ♙c1±) 22... ♖xe2 23. ♚xe2 with the better prospects.

**20. ... ♙e4?**

Both players would appear to experience difficulties in the taking of decisions. Black could have exploited the opportunity to restrict the scope of the opponent's bishops. After 20...f4 21.e5 ♙xf3! 22.gxf3 (22. ♖f2 ♙xg2 23. ♖xg2 ♚xh3 24. ♙xg6 hxg6 25.exd6 cxd6 26. ♚xg6 ♖e7 cannot be recommended for White) 22... ♚xh3 23. ♙xg6 hxg6 24.exd6 cxd6 25. ♚xg6 ♚xf3 26. ♖xe6 ♜f6 27. ♖f1 ♚b3 Black stands clearly better.

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 21. | ♙xe4 | ♙xe4  |
| 22. | ♖xe4 | ♚d8   |
| 23. | ♖ce1 | e5    |
| 24. | dxe5 | dxe5? |

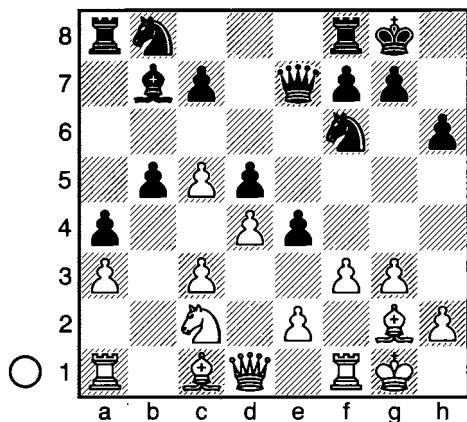
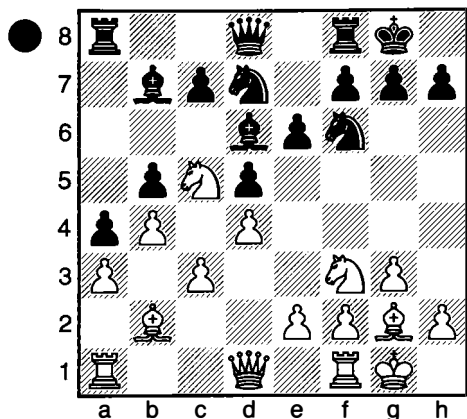
24... ♜gxe5 was more tenacious.

- |     |      |     |
|-----|------|-----|
| 25. | ♖4e3 | ♜c5 |
| 26. | ♜f2  |     |

Black faces a cheerless defence.

## I. Dorfman – J. Diaz

Havana 1988



Position after 18...h6

The players have arrived at this critical position without disturbing the static equilibrium. To maintain it 13...♙xc6 followed by ♖b8 and ♙a8 was sufficient. However, the Cuban grandmaster preferred to exchange minor pieces. Now **everything depends on the pawn structure**. If White does not succeed in enlivening it on the kingside, the opponent will make use of the b3 and c4 squares that he has acquired.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 13. | ...  | ♙xc6 |
| 14. | bxc5 | ♙e7  |
| 15. | ♘e1  | e5   |
| 16. | ♘c2  | e4   |
| 17. | f3   |      |

For the moment White has only created a favourable tension in the centre. In the event of the capture on f3 he will gain control of the e-file and the e5 square.

- |     |     |        |
|-----|-----|--------|
| 17. | ... | ♘b8    |
| 18. | ♙c1 | h6 (D) |
| 19. | g4! |        |

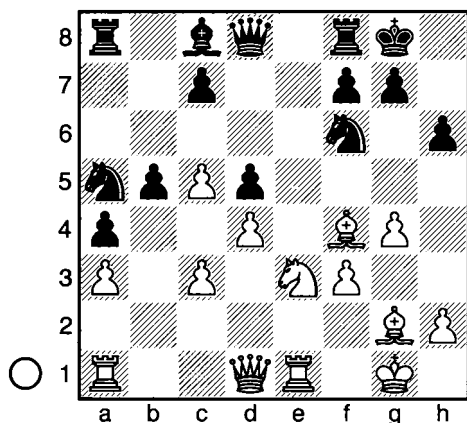
An important link in the chain of dynamic measures, aimed at destabilising Black's position. At the present moment the threat of 20.g5 has to be parried and at the same time the manoeuvre ♘e3-f5 prevented.

In the event of 19.♖b1 ♘c6 20.♖xb5 ♙a6 21.♖b2 exf3 22.♙xf3 ♘e4 Black becomes active on the light squares.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 19. | ...  | exf3 |
| 20. | exf3 | ♘c6  |
| 21. | ♙f4  |      |

21.g5 would have been premature on account of 21...hxg5 22.♙xg5 ♙e6.

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 21. | ... | ♘a5 |
| 22. | ♘e3 | ♙c8 |
| 23. | ♖e1 | ♙d8 |



- |     |     |  |
|-----|-----|--|
| 24. | ♙g3 |  |
|-----|-----|--|

An instructive moment. **Having the bishop pair, White strengthens his presence on the dark squares, which have been weakened as a result of Black's dubious exchange.**

24. ♖e5 was also quite acceptable and logical.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 24. | ...  | ♟c4  |
| 25. | ♙h4  | ♖a6  |
| 26. | ♜b1  | ♞xe3 |
| 27. | ♞xe3 | ♜d7  |
| 28. | ♙f1  |      |

The black pieces are overloaded. The imperceptible but highly effective manoeuvre of the king's bishop plays the role of the straw that breaks the camel's back.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 28. | ...  | c6   |
| 29. | ♙xf6 | gxf6 |
| 30. | ♜e1  | ♜c7  |
| 31. | ♜h4  | ♜f4  |
| 32. | ♞ae1 | ♞a8  |
| 33. | ♙d3  | ♙e6  |
| 34. | ♞f2  | ♞fe8 |
| 35. | ♜g3  |      |

With the disappearance of Black's last active piece, his last hopes of saving the game evaporate.

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 35. | ...  | ♜xg3+ |
| 36. | ♞xg3 | ♞g7   |
| 37. | ♞h4  |       |

and 1-0 ten moves later.

### V.Neverov – A.Groszpeter

Pardubice 2000

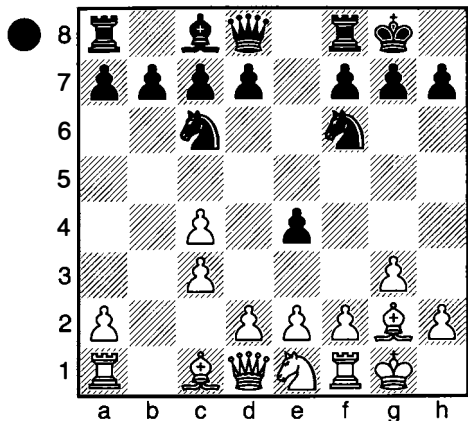
- |    |     |      |
|----|-----|------|
| 1. | c4  | e5   |
| 2. | ♞c3 | ♞f6  |
| 3. | ♞f3 | ♞c6  |
| 4. | g3  | ♙b4  |
| 5. | ♙g2 | 0-0  |
| 6. | 0-0 | e4   |
| 7. | ♞e1 | ♙xc3 |

After 7...♞e8 8.♞d5 ♙c5 (8...♙f8 9.d3) 9.d3 White advantageously sets up a central outpost.

8. bxc3 (D) ♞e8

Acting without any great thought, the Hungarian does not notice the significant difference between the positions of the knight at e1 and g5. Black, after giving up his dark-square bishop, must **create play on the light squares**. This aim is met by 8...d5! 9.cxd5 ♜xd5 10.d3 ♞e8 (10...♜h5 11.dxe4

♙h3 12.♙xh3 ♜xh3 13.f3) 11.♙f4 ♜h5 12.dxe4 (12...♙xc7 ♞d5♠) 12...♞xe4.

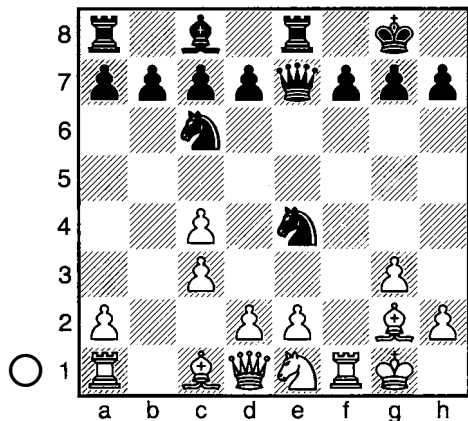


Position after 8.bxc3

9. f3 ♜e7

With the knight at g5 the strongest continuation is considered to be Karpov's 9...e3!. Now this involves a great risk, since after the capture of the pawn White's knight will consolidate his position by soon appearing at d3.

10. fxe4 ♞xe4



11. ♞d3

White's centre may also become mobile after 11.e3.

11...b6 12.♟f4 ♘b7 13.e3 ♞a5 14.d3 ♞f6  
15.e4 ♚c5+ 16.♞h1 ♞xc4 17.dxc4 ♚xc4  
18.♙e3 and 1-0 after 26 moves.

### A.Lesiege – I.Zugic

Montreal 2001

1.	c4	e5
2.	♞c3	♞f6
3.	♞f3	♞c6
4.	g3	♙b4
5.	♙g2	0-0
6.	0-0	e4
7.	♞g5	♙xc3
8.	bxc3	♞e8
9.	f3	exf3

Theory considers 9...e3 10.dxe3 d6 (10...♚e7) to be more promising.

10.	♞xf3	d5
11.	d4	♞e4

The surrender of the centre cannot be recommended: 11...dxc4 12.♙g5 h6 13.♙xf6 ♚xf6 14.e4.

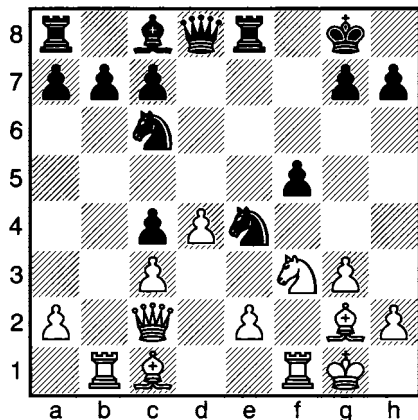
12. ♚c2

Obviously weaker is 12.♚d3 dxc4 13.♚xc4 ♞d6, when Black advantageously establishes control over the light squares.

12. ... dxc4

After 12...♙f5 13.♞h4 ♙e6 (other possibilities are 13...♙g6 14.♙f4 ♞a5 15.cxd5 ♚xd5 16.♙e5 ♞xe5 17.♞xg6 hxg6 18.dxe5 ♚c5+ 19.e3 ♞g5 20.♚f2±, Chernin-Farago, Austria 1996, and also 13...♙g4 14.e3 ♞a5 15.♙f4 f5 16.cxd5 ♞d6 17.c4 ♞axc4 18.e4 g5 19.♞xf5 ♞xf5 20.♞xg4 ♞fe3 21.♚e2 ♞xg4 22.♞xg4 h6 23.e5 ♞b6 24.♚h5 ♞e7 25.♚hx6 ♞g7 26.♙h3 ♞h7 27.♚g6+ ♞g7 28.♚e6+ ♞h8 29.♙f5 1-0, Cu.Hansen-Meins, Bundesliga 1999) 14.♞b1 ♞a5 15.cxd5 ♙xd5 16.♞f5 ♞c4 17.♞f4 ♞f6 18.e4 g5 19.♞h6+ ♞g7 20.♞xf6 ♚xf6 21.♞f5+ ♞h8 22.e5 ♚e6 23.♙xd5 ♚xd5 24.♙xg5 ♞e6 25.♞e7

13. ♞b1 f5



The critical moment of the game. I criticise Black's last move and consider it necessary to test in practice the viability of 13...f6:

A) 14.♞d2 ♞xd4 15.cxd4 ♚xd4+ 16.♞h1 ♞f2+ 17.♞xf2 ♚xf2 18.e4 b6±;

B) 14.♞e5 ♞xe5 (14...fxe5 15.♙xe4 exd4 16.♙xh7+ ♞h8 17.♙g6) 15.♙xe4 (15.dxe5 f5 16.♙xe4 fxe4 17.♚xe4 ♞b8 18.♚xc4+ ♙e6 19.♚d4 b6±) 15...♞g6 16.♙xb7 ♙xb7 17.♞xb7 ♚c8 18.♚b2 c6±;

C) 14.♞h4! ♚d5 15.♙f4 f5 (15...g5 16.♙e5) 16.g4 fxg4 17.♙e5 ♞xe5 18.dxe5 ♚c5+ 19.e3 ♞g5 20.♚d2±.

Also inadequate is 13...♚e7 14.♞d2 ♞g5 15.e4 ♙h3 16.♙xh3 ♞xh3+ 17.♞g2 ♞g5 18.h4 ♞xe4 19.♞xe4 ♚xe4+ 20.♚xe4 ♞xe4 21.♞xb7 ♞c8 22.♙f4 f6 23.♞f3 ♞e6 24.♞fb1 ♞e7 25.♞b5 c5 26.♞xc5 ♞xc5 27.dxc5 a5 28.h5 g5 29.♙d6 ♞d5 30.♞d7 ♞e3+ 31.♞f2 ♞xc3 32.c6 ♞d3 33.c7 ♞xc7 34.♞d8+ ♞f7 35.♙xc7 ♞a3 36.♞d7+ ♞e6 37.♞d6+ ♞e7 38.♞d2 ♞e6 39.♞e2+ ♞d5 40.♙d8 c3 41.♙xf6 ♞c4 42.♙e7 1-0, as shown by the game Hodgson-Naumkin, Amantea 1995.

14. g4 fxc4

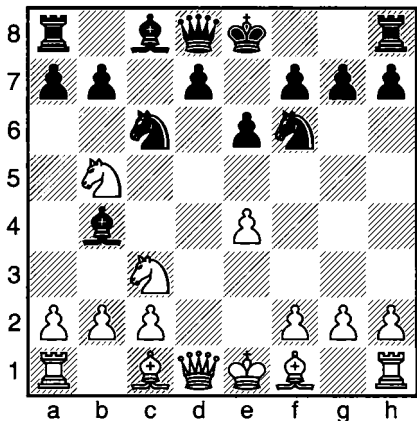
Black was unable to hold the position in a high-level encounter after 14...♚e7 15.gxf5 ♞d6 16.♞g5 ♚xe2 17.♙d5+ ♞h8 18.♚xe2 ♞xe2 19.♙f4 ♞d8 20.♙xd6 cxd6 21.♞bel ♞xe1 22.♞xe1 ♙d7 23.♞e7 ♙c6 24.f6 1-0,

Kasparov-Ivanchuk, 55<sup>th</sup> USSR Championship, Moscow 1988.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 15. | ♘e5  | ♜xe5 |
| 16. | ♙xe4 | ♞g6  |
| 17. | ♙xg6 | hxg6 |
| 18. | ♚xg6 | ♚e7  |
| 19. | ♞b5  | ♚e6  |
| 20. | ♚h5  | g6   |
| 21. | ♚h6  | 1-0  |

**J.Mason – J.Mieses**  
Paris 1900

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 1. | e4   | c5   |
| 2. | ♘f3  | e6   |
| 3. | ♘c3  | ♘c6  |
| 4. | d4   | cxd4 |
| 5. | ♘xd4 | ♞f6  |
| 6. | ♘db5 | ♙b4  |



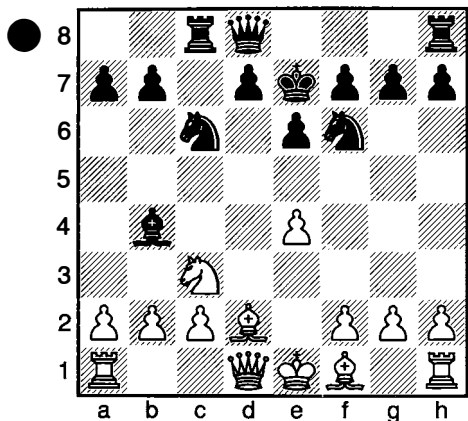
7. ♘d6+?

A rare idea. According to modern theory White should aim for a different exchange. After 7.a3 ♙xc3+ 8.♘xc3 d5 9.exd5 exd5 (9...♘xd5 10.♙d2 does not change the character of the play) 10.♙d3 White possesses the bishop pair with a flexible pawn structure. Despite certain successes by Kramnik and Grischuk, this variation still has the reputation of being passive and in-spid.

7. ... ♚e7

- |    |       |      |
|----|-------|------|
| 8. | ♜xc8+ | ♞xc8 |
| 9. | ♙d2   |      |

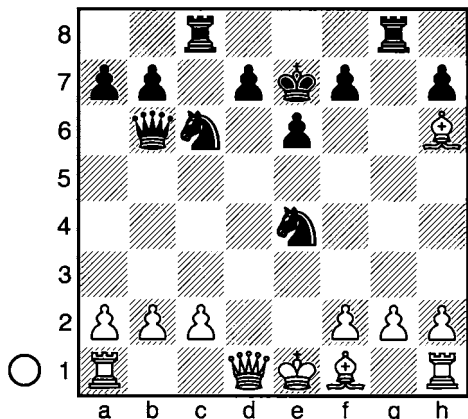
Otherwise Black breaks in the centre after 9.f3 d5 10.exd5 ♘xd5 or 9.♙d3 d5 10.exd5 ♚xd5 11.0-0 ♙xc3 (theory demonstrates the solidity of the endgame arising after 11...♚h5) 12.bxc3 ♞hd8 13.♙a3+ ♚e8.



At the end of a series of forced moves a critical position has been reached.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 9.  | ...  | ♙xc3 |
| 10. | ♙xc3 | ♘xe4 |
| 11. | ♙xg7 | ♚a5+ |

In my opinion, after 11...♞g8 12.♙h6 ♚b6



Black already holds the initiative.

**I.Dorfman – A.Hauchard**

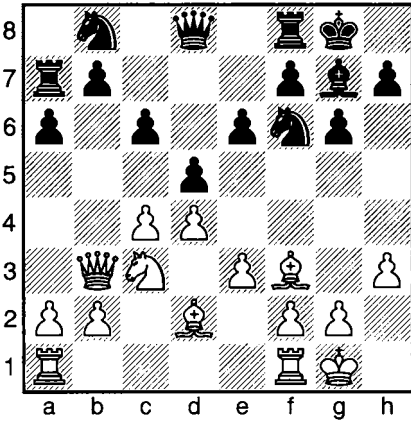
Mondariz (Zonal Tournament) 2000

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | d4  | d5  |
| 2. | c4  | c6  |
| 3. | e3  | ♘f6 |
| 4. | ♖c3 | g6  |
| 5. | ♗f3 | ♙g7 |
| 6. | ♚e2 | 0-0 |
| 7. | 0-0 | a6  |
| 8. | ♙d2 |     |

Nowadays 4...a6 has become popular.

The most dangerous continuation, in my view. White prepares an attack on the opponent's weakened queenside.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 8.  | ...  | ♙g4  |
| 9.  | ♚b3  | ♙a7  |
| 10. | h3   | ♙xf3 |
| 11. | ♙xf3 | e6   |

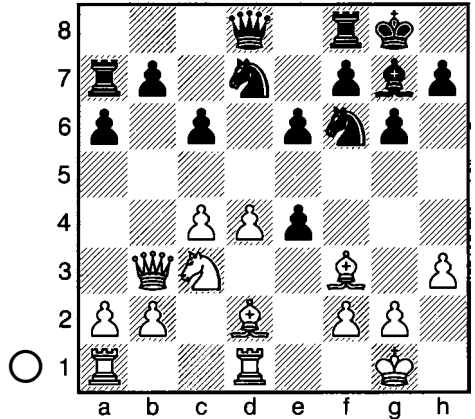


A critical position, arising as a result of a series of forced moves. After lengthy thought White modifies the pawn structure in the centre.

- |     |      |          |
|-----|------|----------|
| 12. | ♙f1  | ♘bd7     |
| 13. | e4   | dxe4 (D) |
| 14. | ♙xe4 |          |

An exceptionally important moment. As a rule, for the player who has the advantage of the two bishops it is advantageous to retain his knight. One of the reasons I see as being the reduced likelihood of his

opponent acquiring the favourable queen + knight tandem.



Position after 13...dxe4

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 14. | ... | ♚c7 |
|-----|-----|-----|

It would appear that Black cannot eliminate the powerful bishop without a further deterioration in his position. His queen's rook is badly placed, his d6 square is weak (the bishop sortie to b4 is threatened) and, to add to his woes, ♙g5 is in the air.

Here are some variations which, as I see it, demonstrate White's advantage.

14...♗xe4 15.♗xe4:

A) 15...♙xd4? 16.♙g5 f6 (16...♗c5 17.♚c2 ♚a5 18.b4+-) 17.♙xd4 fxe4 18.♙ad1 b6 19.c5+-;

B) 15...♚h4!:

B1) 16.♚e3 ♙aa8 17.♚f3 ♗f6 18.♗d6 ♙ad8 19.♙f4 ♙d7=;

B2) 16.♚f3 ♗f6 17.♗d6 (17.♗c5 b6 18.♗b3 ♚e4 19.♚xe4 ♗xe4 20.♙f4 ♙d8 21.♙e1 ♗f6 22.a4 a5=) 17...♗e8;

B3) 16.♙e1! ♙xd4? 17.♚d3 c5 18.♙g5 ♗e5 19.♚e2+-.

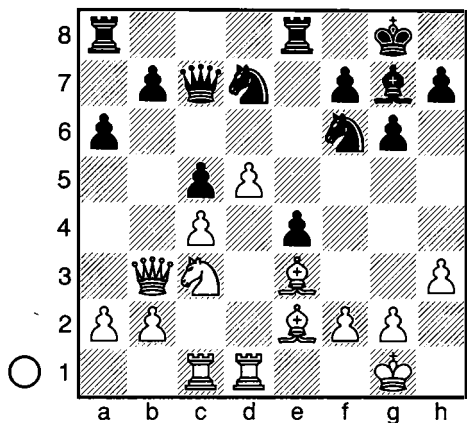
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 15. | ♙f3  | ♙aa8 |
| 16. | ♙ac1 | e5   |

Again a critical position is reached. Black wants to fix the pawn structure, but his opponent does not fall in with his wishes.

- |     |     |    |
|-----|-----|----|
| 17. | d5  | e4 |
| 18. | ♙e2 |    |

Little is promised by 18. ♖xe4 ♗xe4  
 19. ♗xe4 ♗c5 20. ♖c2 ♗xe4 21. ♖xe4  
 ♗xb2 22. ♗f4 ♖c8 (22... ♖d7 23. dxc6  
 ♖xc6 24. ♖xc6 bxc6 25. ♖b1 ♗c3 26. c5±)  
 23. ♖b1 ♖e8 24. ♖f3 ♗g7.

18. ... c5  
 19. ♗e3 ♖fe8



V. Smyslov – W. Uhlmann

Skopje 1969

1. d4 ♗f6  
 2. c4 g6  
 3. ♗c3 d5  
 4. ♗f3 ♗g7  
 5. cxd5 ♗xd5  
 6. ♗d2 0-0  
 7. ♖c1 ♗b6  
 8. e3 ♗g4  
 9. ♗e2 c6  
 10. 0-0 ♗xf3

After 10... ♗d7 11. h3 ♗xf3 12. ♗xf3 e5  
 13. d5 White not only remains with the  
 bishop pair, but also successfully initiates  
 play on the light squares.

11. ♗xf3 e5  
 12. dxe5

Little is promised by 12. ♗e2 ♗d7 13. ♗c3  
 ♖e8 14. ♖c2 ♖e7.

12. ... ♗xe5  
 13. ♖c2

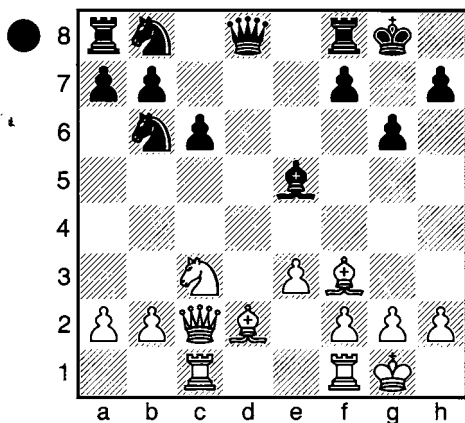
On this occasion a critical position crowns  
 a series of forced moves. If Black's bishop  
 should move to a blocking position in  
 front of the white passed pawn, the white  
 king will become weak. Now comes a se-  
 ries of dynamic moves.

20. d6 ♖c6  
 21. ♖a4 ♖ac8  
 22. b4 ♖xa4  
 23. ♗xa4 cxb4  
 24. c5 h5

Black has no way of opposing the oppo-  
 nent's weighty arguments and he makes a  
 useful move, not allowing himself to be  
 cramped on the kingside and intending an  
 exchange of bishops.

25. ♖b1 a5  
 26. a3 bxa3  
 27. ♖xb7

The white passed pawns are irresistible.  
 27... ♗d5 28. ♗xd5 a2 29. ♖d1 ♖ed8  
 30. ♗c4 a1 ♖ 31. ♖xa1 ♗xa1 32. ♗g5 ♖b8  
 33. ♖xb8 ♖xb8 34. c6 ♖b1+ 35. ♗f1 1-0



How can the German grandmaster's  
 play, at first sight so provocative, be jus-  
 tified?! Black has a clear strategic guide.  
 He must achieve the exchange of the  
 dark-square bishops and a pair of  
 knights.

13. ... ♗d7?

In the light of what has been said, required  
 of Black was the subtle manoeuvre



13...♖c4! 14.♙e1 (14.♞cd1 ♚c7 15.g3 ♜xd2 16.♞xd2 ♜a6 17.♞fd1 ♞ad8=) 14...♜d6 (14...♜a6 15.♙e2), controlling the light squares. I will give a sample analysis of this position, demonstrating the technique of playing Black in positions of this type:

A) 15.♙e2 ♚e7 16.♙d3 (16.♙d2 ♜d7 17.♞fe1 ♞fe8 18.♙f1 ♞ad8 19.b3 ♜c5 20.g3 ♜ce4 21.♜xe4 ♜xe4 22.♙a5 ♙c7) 16...♜d7 17.b4 ♞fe8 18.e4 ♞ad8 19.♞d1 ♜b6 20.f4 ♙d4+ 21.♞h1 ♜dc4;

B) 15.g3 ♜d7 16.♙g2 ♞e8 17.e4 ♜c5 18.♞d1 ♚b6;

C) 15.♜a4 ♜d7.

14. ♜e4 f5

An acknowledgement of the failure of Black's strategic conception. He also does not equalise by 14...♜d5 15.♜g3 ♞c8 16.♚b3 ♜7b6 17.a4.

15. ♜g3 a5

16. b4 axb4

17. ♙xb4 ♞e8

18. ♚b3+ ♞g7

Black has not only failed to achieve advantageous exchanges, but he has also weakened irreparably the position of his king.

19.♞fd1 ♚c7 20.♜e2 ♙xh2+ 21.♞h1 ♙e5 22.♜d4 ♚d8 23.g3 ♚f6 24.a4 ♚f7 25.a5 ♜d5 26.♙xd5 cxd5 27.♜f3 d4 28.♚xf7+ ♞xf7 29.exd4 ♙b8 30.♞e1 ♙a7 31.♞xe8 ♞xe8 32.♞e1+ ♜d8 33.♙e7+ ♞e8 34.♙g5+ ♞f8 35.♙h6+ ♞g8 36.♞e7 ♞d8 1-0

### S.Tiviakov – A.Dreev

Ubeda 1999

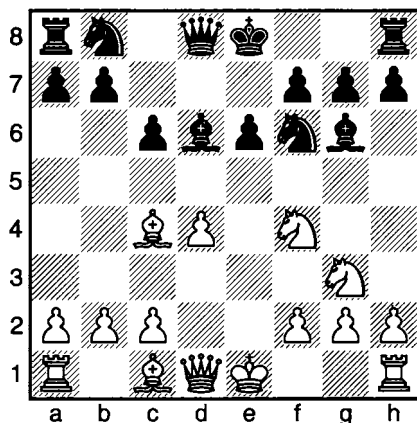
1. e4 c6  
2. d4 d5  
3. ♜d2 dxе4  
4. ♜xe4 ♙f5  
5. ♜g3 ♙g6  
6. ♙c4 e6

In the game Marciano-Dorfman, France 1999, Black gained equal chances after

6...♜f6 7.♜1e2 ♜d5 8.♜f4 ♜xf4 9.♙xf4 e6 10.c3 ♙d6.

7. ♜1e2 ♜f6

8. ♜f4 ♙d6



9. h4

Perhaps the initial cause of White's subsequent difficulties.

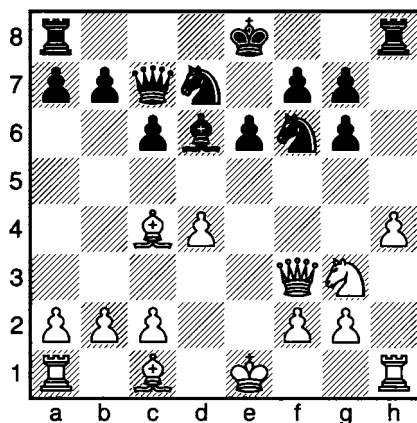
9. ... ♚c7

10. ♜xg6 hxg6

11. ♚f3 ♜bd7

The end of a series of forced moves. The static evaluation is slightly favourable to White:

1. = 2. ± 3. ± 4. ±



It is logical to think that any neutral move will leave the evaluation unchanged.

12. ♖g5?!

Here it is worth recalling that **static moves are those that prevent a change in the evaluation**. Black is better developed and therefore it would be better not to engage him in an open battle. It would appear that the demands of the position were answered by the exchange 12.♖e4 ♗xe4 13.♙xe4. Then 13...c5 could have been met by the resolute 14.d5!, initiating favourable play on the light squares.

12. ... c5

13. dxc5

After 13.0-0 cxd4 14.♙xd4 ♖e5 White would have lost material.

13. ... ♙xc5

14. ♖xf6

After his poor reply on the 12<sup>th</sup> move White is no longer able to consolidate his position: 14.♙xb7 ♖b8 15.♙a6 ♖b6 16.♙a4 ♖b4; 14.♙e2 ♖xg3 15.fxg3 ♙xg5; 14.♙b3 0-0-0 15.♖e3 ♙a5+ 16.♖d2 ♙e5+.

14. ... ♖xf6

15. ♖b3 0-0-0

16. c3

If 16.0-0, then 16...♙xh4.

16. ... ♖xg3

17. ♙xg3

White cannot seriously consider 17.fxg3 ♙e5+ 18.♖f1 ♗e4 with a winning attack for Black.

17. ... ♖h5

18. 0-0 ♖dh8

19. ♙f3 ♖xh4

20. g3 ♖h2

21. ♖c2 g5

22. ♖e4 g4

23. ♙f4 ♙h5

0-1

**K.Scheidegger – I.Dorfman**

Cannes 1993

1. e4 c5

2. ♖f3 a6

3. d4?

It is on this continuation that Black is counting, in adopting this dubious variation. Correct, as is well known, is 3.c4.

3. ... cxd4

4. ♗xd4 ♗f6

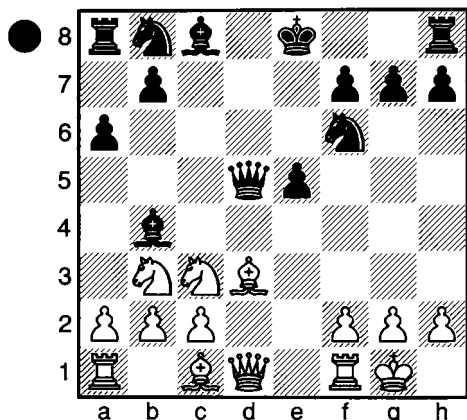
5. ♗c3 e5

6. ♗b3 ♖b4

7. ♖d3 d5

8. exd5 ♙xd5

9. 0-0



After White's mistake on the 3<sup>rd</sup> move a critical position has been reached. **Here the exchange of bishop for knight is justified by the fact that the pawn structure is fixed.**

9. ... ♖xc3

10. bxc3 0-0

11. c4 ♙c6

12. ♖b2

The character of the play would remain identical to the game after 12.♖g5 ♖g4 13.f3 (13.♙d2 ♗bd7) 13...♖h5.

12. ... ♖e8

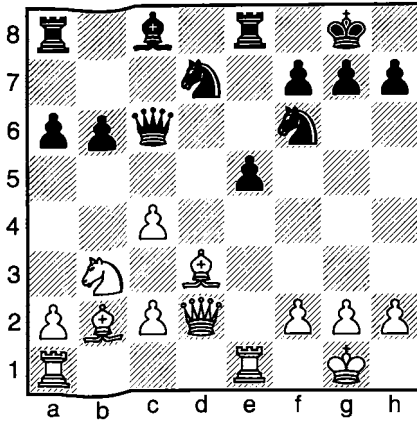
13. ♖e1 ♗bd7

14. ♙d2 b6 (D)

13. ♙g5?!

White loses a tempo in an already delicate position. **He should have sought dynamic play on the queenside, by playing 15.a4.** Now 15...a5 runs into 16.c5, but the accurate reply 15...♖b7 16.f3 e4 17.fxe4 ♗xe4

maintains all the trumps of Black's position.

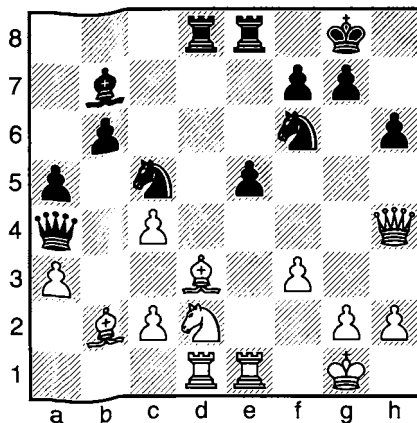


Position after 14...b6

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 15. | ... | h6  |
| 16. | ♙h4 | ♘b7 |
| 17. | f3  | a5  |

From now on Black's position is so strong that White can no longer hope for a breakthrough.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 18. | ♘d2  | ♖ad8 |
| 19. | ♖ad1 | ♙a4  |
| 20. | a3   | ♘c5  |



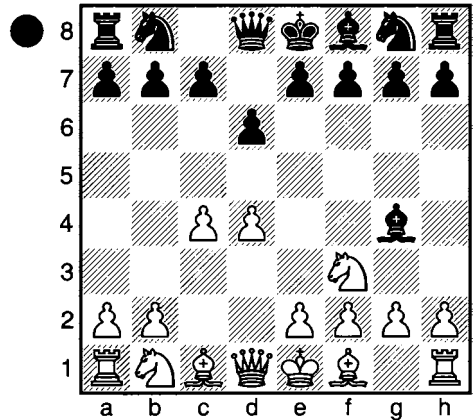
After strengthening his position to the maximum, Black comes into contact with the opposing army. The e5 pawn is immune on account of the rook at d1 being

undefended. White faces the thankless task of defending his numerous weaknesses. He is doomed.

## D.Garcia Ilundain – I.Dorfman

Terassa 1992

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | d4  | d6  |
| 2. | ♘f3 | ♘g4 |
| 3. | c4  |     |



Black has chosen an aggressive but risky system of development. It is possible that a refutation of it lies in the variation 3.e4 ♘f6 4.♘c3 e6 5.h3 ♘h5 6.g4 ♘g6 7.♙e2 c6 8.h4.

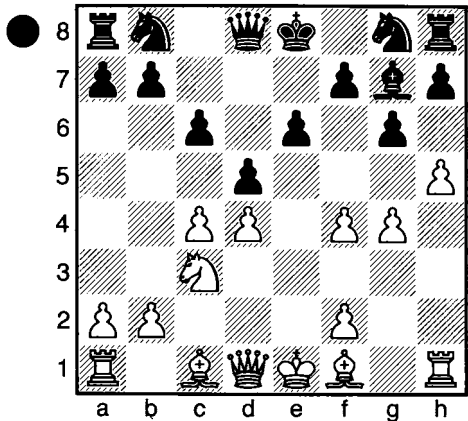
The Spanish grandmaster prefers to play a position with two bishops and a mobile pawn structure.

- |    |      |      |
|----|------|------|
| 3. | ...  | ♘xf3 |
| 4. | exf3 | c6   |
| 5. | ♘c3  | g6   |
| 6. | f4   |      |

A logical attempt to use the more advanced of the doubled pawns as a battering-ram.

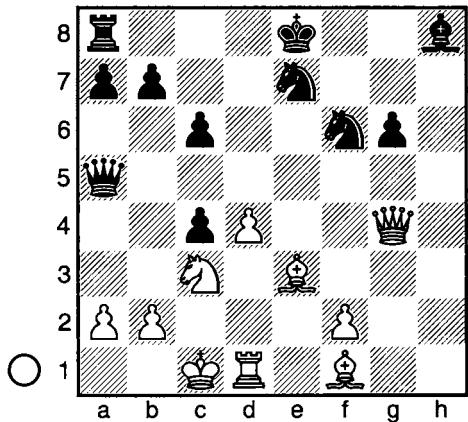
- |    |        |     |
|----|--------|-----|
| 6. | ...    | ♘g7 |
| 7. | g4     | e6  |
| 8. | h4     | d5  |
| 9. | h5 (D) |     |

In the absence of the enemy queen's bishop, White builds up pressure on the weakened squares.



Position after 9.h5

- |     |       |       |
|-----|-------|-------|
| 9.  | ...   | dx c4 |
| 10. | e3    | ♘d7   |
| 11. | f5    | exf5  |
| 12. | gxf5  | ♙a5   |
| 13. | hxg6  | hxg6  |
| 14. | ♖xh8  | ♘xh8  |
| 15. | fxg6  | fxg6  |
| 16. | ♚g4   | ♗e7   |
| 17. | 0-0-0 | ♗f6   |



18. ♚h3

It appears that things would have been more difficult for Black after 18.♚h3, but even so he would have maintained equality

by 18...♗f5 19.♘d2 ♘xd4 20.♗xd5 ♚xd5 21.♘c3 c5 22.♖e1 ♗f8 23.♘g2 ♚f5 24.♘xd4 cxd4 25.♖e4 ♚f6.

- |     |       |       |
|-----|-------|-------|
| 18. | ...   | ♚h5   |
| 19. | ♚g3   | 0-0-0 |
| 20. | ♘h3+  | ♗f5   |
| 21. | d5    | ♗xd5  |
| 22. | ♘xa7  | ♗c7   |
| 23. | ♘xf5+ | ♚xf5  |
| 24. | ♖xd8+ | ♗xd8  |
| 25. | ♘b6   | ♘e5   |
| 26. | ♚h4+  | ♗c8   |
| 27. | ♚xc4  |       |

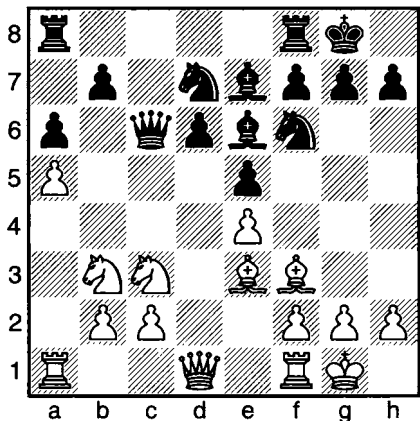
and the two sides' chances are equal.

V.Smyslov – M.Tal

Yugoslavia (Candidates Tournament) 1959

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 1.  | e4   | c5    |
| 2.  | ♗f3  | d6    |
| 3.  | d4   | cx d4 |
| 4.  | ♗xd4 | ♗f6   |
| 5.  | ♗c3  | a6    |
| 6.  | ♘e2  | e5    |
| 7.  | ♗b3  | ♘e7   |
| 8.  | 0-0  | 0-0   |
| 9.  | ♘e3  | ♚c7   |
| 10. | a4   | ♘e6   |
| 11. | a5   | ♚c6   |
| 12. | ♘f3  | ♗bd7  |

The two players have harmoniously deployed their forces and the time has come to decide on a plan.



## 13. ♖d5 ♕xd5?

One gains the impression that Tal overlooked his opponent's unusual reply on the 15th move. Otherwise he could have continued 13...♕d8 14.♖d3 ♖c8 15.♗fc1:

A) 15...♗g4 16.♕xg4 ♕xg4 17.f3 ♕e6 18.c4 f5 19.♗d2:

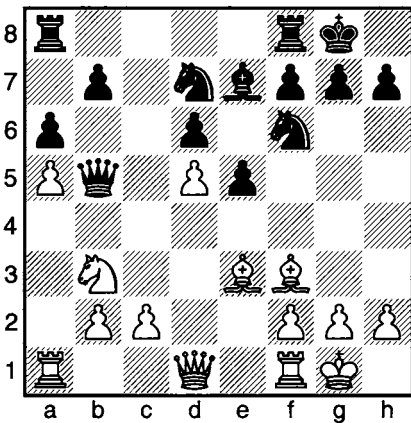
A1) 19...♕xd5? 20.exd5 ♖c7 21.b4 e4 22.fxe4 ♕f6 23.♖ab1 ♗e5 24.♖e2 and Black has no compensation for the pawn;

A2) 19...♗f6! 20.b3 (20.b4 fxe4 21.fxe4 ♖d7) 20...fxe4 21.fxe4 ♗g4 22.♖f1 ♖xf1+ 23.♗xf1 (23.♖xf1 b5 24.axb6 ♗xe3 25.♗xe3 ♕xb6 26.♗h1 ♕xe3 27.♖xe3 a5=) 23...♗xe3 24.♗fxe3 ♕g5 with sufficient counterplay;

A3) weaker is 19...♗c5 20.♖a3 fxe4 21.fxe4;

B) 15...♖c4 16.♗xf6+ ♗xf6 17.♖xd6 ♖b5 18.♗c5 ♖e8 19.♗xe6 ♖xe6 20.♖a3 with a serious advantage to White.

## 14. exd5 ♖b5



Bad is 14...♖c4 15.♗d2 ♖h4 (15...♖b5 16.♖b1) 16.g3 ♖h3 17.♖a4 when thanks to his bishops White dominates. At first sight Black is completely alright in view of the threats to the d5 pawn. But his position is unstable, since White can transpose into a favourable ending.

## 15. ♖d3!

This idea was logically prepared by White's preceding play. The features of the pawn

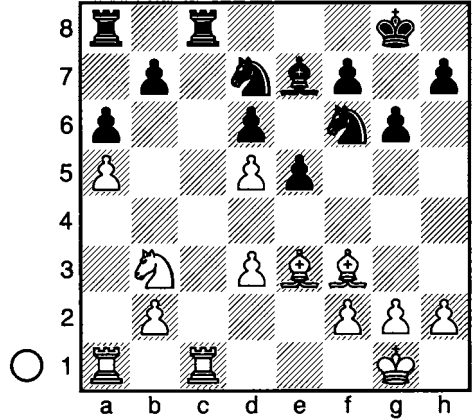
structure on the queenside allow him to plan new gains on this part of the board.

15. ... ♖fc8

16. ♖fc1 ♖xd3

17. cxd3 g6

The light-square bishop 'wakes up' after 17...♗c5 18.♗xc5 dxc5 19.d6.



## 18. ♖c3!

A deeply conceived manoeuvre, inducing concessions. White opens the b-file and acquires a pawn armada in the centre.

18. ... ♖xc3

19. bxc3 ♖c8

20. c4 e4

21. dxe4 ♖xc4

22. ♗d2 ♖c2

23. ♕d1 ♖c3

24. ♗f1 ♗c5

25. ♕d4 ♖d3

26. ♕xc5 dxc5

Smyslov's technique, as usual, is based on tactical nuances. If 26...♖xd2, then 27.♕e3 ♖b2 28.♖c1 ♗xe4 29.♖c8+ ♗g7 30.♕d4+.

27. ♗e2 ♖xd2+

28. ♗xd2 ♗xe4+

29. ♗c2 ♗d6

Black loses after 29...♗xf2 30.♕f3 f5 31.♖b1.

30. ♕e2 ♕f6

31. ♖b1 ♗f8

32. ♗b3 ♗e7

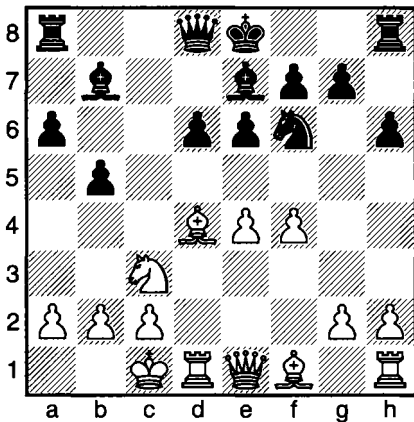
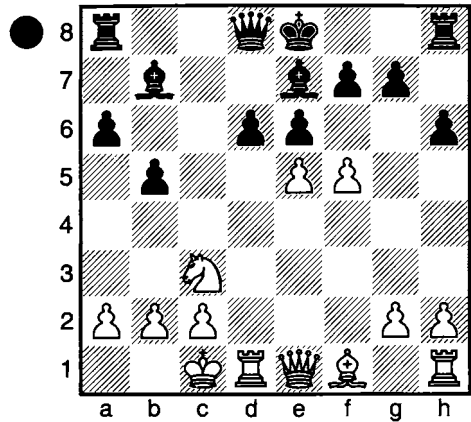
33. ♕d3 ♗d7

34. f4 1-0  
31 moves later

**T.Horvath – I.Dorfman**  
Lvov 1984

- |     |       |      |
|-----|-------|------|
| 1.  | e4    | c5   |
| 2.  | ♘f3   | d6   |
| 3.  | d4    | cxd4 |
| 4.  | ♘xd4  | ♘f6  |
| 5.  | ♘c3   | a6   |
| 6.  | ♙g5   | ♘c6  |
| 7.  | ♚d2   | e6   |
| 8.  | 0-0-0 | h6   |
| 9.  | ♙e3   | ♙e7  |
| 10. | f4    | ♘xd4 |
| 11. | ♙xd4  | b5   |
| 12. | ♚e1   | ♙b7  |

♙xe5 22.fxex6 fxe6 23.♘c1±. For the moment he is forced to reply with the only moves.



In this position, which must be regarded as a critical one, in the quest for the initiative White gives up his bishop. He tries to exploit the dynamic weakness of the opponent's king.

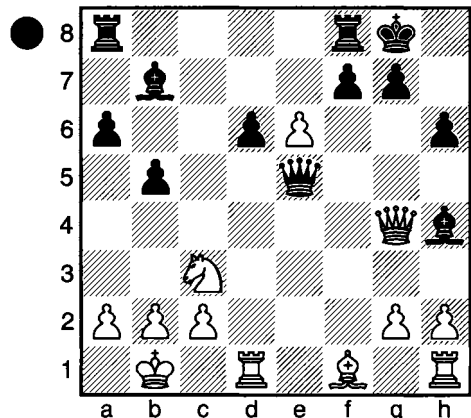
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 13. | ♙xf6 | ♙xf6 |
| 14. | e5   | ♙e7  |
| 15. | f5   |      |

A typical Sicilian situation. Black is hoping to endure bad times, in order to win in the endgame. It would appear that on this occasion his risk is excessive, since 15...d5 runs into 16.♚g3 ♙h4 17.♚xg7 ♚g5+ 18.♚xg5 ♙xg5+ 19.♙b1 ♙f4 20.♙e1 ♙g8 21.♘e2

- |     |      |     |
|-----|------|-----|
| 15. | ...  | ♙h4 |
| 16. | ♚e2  | 0-0 |
| 17. | fxe6 |     |

An undoubted success for Black! The opponent rejects 17.f6. Neither I, nor he saw any direct threats after 17...gxf6 18.♚g4+ ♙g5+ 19.♙b1 f5 20.♚g3 ♙h7 21.h4 ♙e7 22.exd6 ♙f6.

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 17. | ... | ♚g5+ |
| 18. | ♙b1 | ♚xe5 |
| 19. | ♚g4 |      |



- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 19. | ... | ♚g5 |
|-----|-----|-----|

Unexpectedly the endgame has become a reality. If White avoids the exchange, than after 20. ♖h3 ♜ae8 21. exf7+ (he loses after 21. ♜xd6 fxe6 22. ♜xe6? ♙c8) 21... ♜xf7 22. ♜xd6 ♙c8 23. ♜d3 ♜e1+ 24. ♜d1 ♙g4 he is unable to set up a defensive line.

20.	♙e2	♜xg4
21.	♙xg4	♙xg2
22.	♜hg1	♙b7
23.	♜xd6	♙f2
24.	exf7+	♜xf7
25.	♜gd1	♙c5
26.	♜d7	♜e8
27.	a3	g6

Everything proceeds according to a familiar scenario. After consolidating his position, Black activates his majority on the king-side. Already here it can be ascertained that White's plan has failed.

28. b4 ♙f8 29. ♜1d3 ♜xd7 30. ♙xd7 ♜e1+  
31. ♙b2 h5 32. ♙b3 g5 33. a4 bxa4+  
34. ♙xa4 ♜h1 35. h3 ♙c8 36. ♜g3 ♙e6+  
37. ♙b2 ♜xh3 38. ♜xg5+ ♙g7 39. ♜c5 h4  
40. ♙c6 ♙d4 41. ♙b7 ♜xc3 0-1

### A. Karpov – S. Dolmatov

Amsterdam 1980

**In the battle against a bishop pair you should play on squares of the colour of your remaining bishop. As a consequence of this strategy, the favourable queen + knight tandem often arises.**

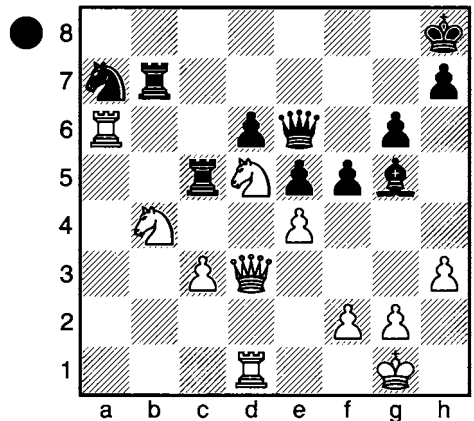
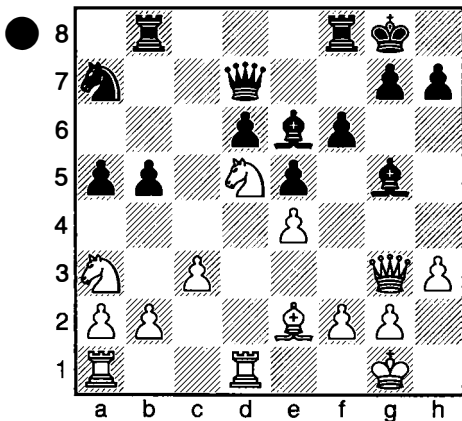
The following variation clearly illustrates Black's difficulties: 19... ♖b7 20. ♙g4 ♙f7 21. h4 ♙h6 22. ♜xf6+ gxf6 23. ♙c8+.

19. ... ♙h8

Black accepts the inevitable. He completely concedes control of the light squares to his opponent.

Perhaps he should have tried 19... g6 20. ♙g4 f5 21. ♙xf5 (21. exf5 gxf5 22. ♙xf5 ♜xf5 23. ♜e3 ♜g7) 21... gxf5 22. ♖xg5+ ♙h8 with counterplay for the sacrificed pawn. After all, from a practical viewpoint it is important to **improve your chances of success.**

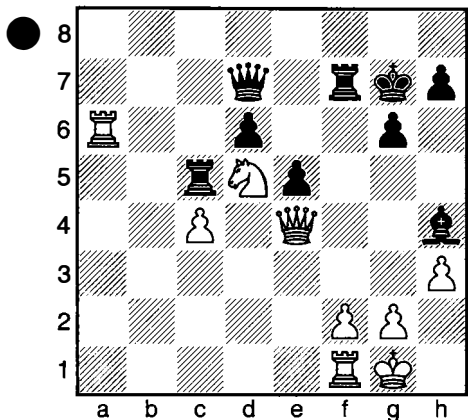
20.	♙g4	♜fc8
21.	♙xe6	♜xe6
22.	♜d3	♜c5
23.	♜c2	g6
24.	b4	axb4
25.	♜cxb4	♜b7
26.	a4	bxa4
27.	♜xa4	f5
28.	♜a6	



With his last move 19.h3 White has prepared the exchange of bishops. The world champion was especially dangerous in this type of position.

Karpov has set up an absolutely impregnable position.

- 28. ... ♖c8
- 29. ♖a8 ♗g7
- 30. ♗e2 fxe4
- 31. ♗xe4 ♗f5
- 32. ♗e2 ♖f7
- 33. c4 ♗h4
- 34. ♖f1 ♖e7
- 35. ♖a6 ♗d7
- 36. ♗e4 ♖xd5
- 37. ♖xd5



Now, without any hindrance, White can exploit the enemy king's insecure shelter, relying on his powerful queen + knight tandem.

- 37. ... ♗e7
- 38. ♖fa1 ♗f8
- 39. ♗e2 ♖c6
- 40. ♖6a3 ♖c5
- 41. ♖f3 ♖xf3
- 42. ♗xf3

The exchange of rooks has eliminated an important defender of the king, and now White begins the decisive assault.

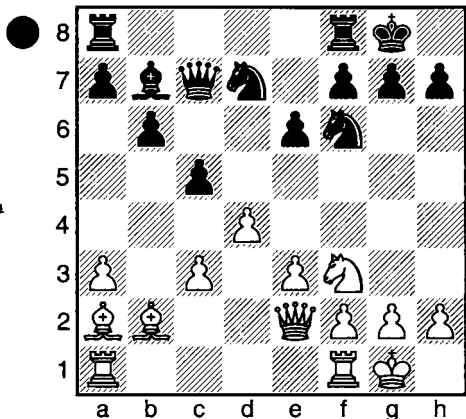
- 42... ♗f7 43. ♗g4 h5 44. ♗e4 ♖c8 45. ♖a3 ♗f5 46. ♖a7+ ♗h6 47. ♗e3+ g5 48. ♗e2 ♖b8 49. g4 hxg4 50. hxg4 ♗b1+ 51. ♗g2 ♖b7 52. ♖xb7 ♗xb7 53. ♗f3 ♗c8 54. ♗f6+ ♗h7 55. ♗f7+ 1-0

**I. Dorfman – A. Khalifman**  
Bundesliga 2001

- 1. d4 ♖f6
- 2. c4 e6
- 3. ♖c3 ♗b4
- 4. e3 0-0
- 5. ♗d3 d5
- 6. a3 ♗xc3+
- 7. bxc3 dxc4
- 8. ♗xc4 c5
- 9. ♖f3 ♗c7

A subtle manoeuvre, forcing the bishop to occupy an unfavourable position, since if 10. ♗d3 there follows 10... cxd4 11. cxd4 ♗c3+.

- 10. ♗a2 ♖bd7
- 11. 0-0 b6
- 12. ♗e2 ♗b7
- 13. ♗b2

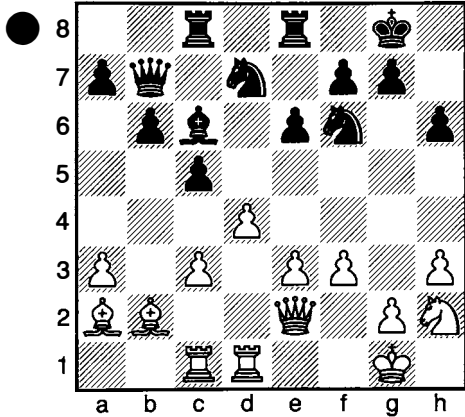


A critical moment. Up till now the play of both sides can be considered logical. White has prepared 14. ♖d2. Subsequently he will try to place his pawns on f3 and e4 and to create play on the dark squares.

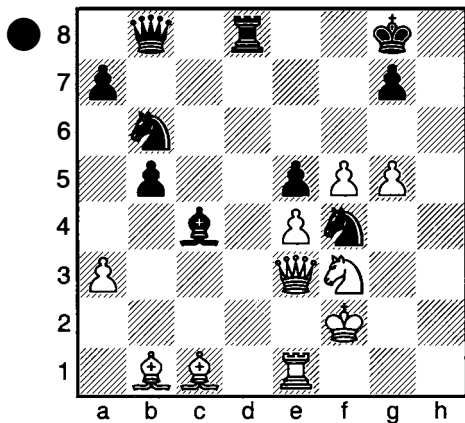
- 13. ... cxd4

The play followed a similar scenario in the later game Milov-Adams, European Team Championship, Leon 2001: 13... ♖fe8 14. ♖ac1 h6 15. ♖fd1 ♖ac8 16. h3 ♗c6 17. ♖h2 ♗b7 18. f3





18...cxd4 19.cxd4 ♔d5 20.♙b1 b5 21.e4  
 ♚xc1 22.♚xc1 ♙c4 23.♜e3 ♜b6 24.♞f2  
 ♜b8 25.f4 ♞b6 26.♞f3 ♞fd7 27.g4 ♞f8  
 28.♚g1 f6 29.h4 ♞g6 30.♙c1 e5 31.dxe5  
 fxe5 32.f5 ♞f4 33.♚e1 ♚d8 34.g5 hxg5  
 35.hxg5



35...♙d3 36.♙a2+ ♙c4 37.♙b1 ♙d3  
 38.♙a2+ ½-½, where Black skilfully built up  
 counterplay on the light squares.

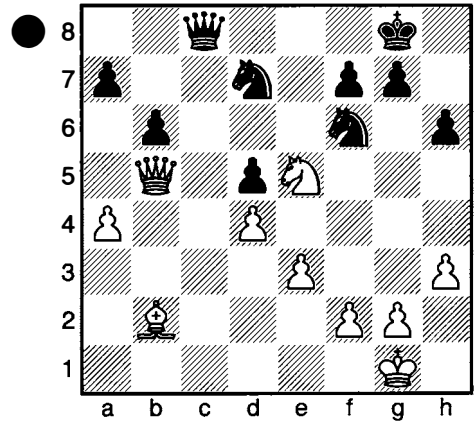
14. cxd4 ♔d5

A multi-purpose exchange. **Black extends his presence on the light squares and at the same time aims to create the favourable queen + knight tandem.**

15. ♙xd5 exd5  
 16. ♚fc1 ♜b7

Beginning from this moment, **White must act dynamically.**

17. a4 ♚fc8  
 18. ♞e5 ♚xc1+  
 19. ♚xc1 ♚c8  
 20. ♚xc8+ ♜xc8  
 21. h3 h6  
 22. ♜b5



**A critical moment. The exchange of queens is threatened, after which Black will lose his static trumps.** The former world champion acts irrefragably, demonstrating a subtle feeling for the dynamics of the struggle.

22. ... ♞xe5  
 23. dxe5 ♞e4  
 24. ♜xd5 ♜c2  
 25. ♞h2 ♞g5

25...♜xb2 26.♜a8+ ♞h7 27.♜xe4+.  
 26. f4 ♜xb2

Black has calculated a drawing variation, and he naturally avoids 26...♞e6 27.♙d4 ♜xa4 28.f5 ♞xd4 29.♜d8+ ♞h7 30.exd4.

27. fxg5 hxg5  
 28. e6

White has to reconcile himself to the inevitable draw, since after 28.♜d8+ ♞h7 29.♜xg5 ♜b3 30.♜h4+ ♞g8 31.♜d4 a6 there is no question of him standing better.

28. ... fxe6  
 29. ♜xe6+ ♞h7  
 30. e4 ½-½

**R.Kazimdzhanov – I.Dorfman**

Bundesliga 2002

- |    |       |       |
|----|-------|-------|
| 1. | e4    | e6    |
| 2. | d4    | d5    |
| 3. | ♘c3   | dx e4 |
| 4. | ♘xe4  | ♘d7   |
| 5. | ♘f3   | ♘gf6  |
| 6. | ♘xf6+ | ♘xf6  |
| 7. | c3    | c5    |

Black probably suffers here because of his last move, and this is quite logical. White has no enduring advantage, and his only chance involves playing to exploit his lead in development. Therefore the correct move is the restrained 7...♙e7, which can lead to interesting complications after:

A) 8.♙d3 0-0 9.0-0 b6 10.♖e2 ♙b7 11.♙f4 c5 (11...♗c8) 12.dxc5 bxc5 13.♞fd1 ♗b6 14.♘e5 ♞ad8 15.♙g3 ♙a8 16.♘c4 ♗c6 17.f3 ♞d5 18.♘e5 ½-½, A.Sokolov-Dorfman, French Team Championship, Reims 2002;

B) 8.g3 ♙d7 9.♘e5 ♙c6 10.♘xc6 ♗d5 11.♗b3 bxc6 12.♞g1 ♗d7 13.♙c4 (13.♙g2 0-0 14.♗a4 ♘d5) 13...0-0.

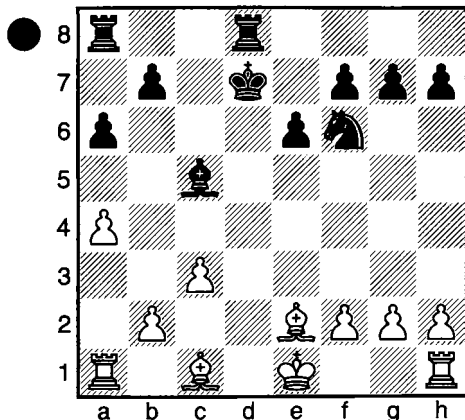
- |    |      |    |
|----|------|----|
| 8. | ♘e5  | a6 |
| 9. | ♗a4+ |    |

An incorrect evaluation of the endgame position with two bishops. The refutation consists in 9.♙e3! cxd4 10.♙xd4 ♘d7 (10...b5 11.a4 b4 12.♘c6 ♗c7 13.♘xb4 ♙b7 14.a5) 11.♗h5 ♘xe5 12.♙xe5 ♗d5 13.♞d1 ♗e4+ 14.♙e2 g6 15.f3! ♗e3 16.♙f6 ♙e7 17.♗h4 ♙xf6 18.♗xf6 0-0 19.h4±.

- |     |       |      |
|-----|-------|------|
| 9.  | ...   | ♙d7  |
| 10. | ♘xd7  | ♗xd7 |
| 11. | ♗xd7+ | ♙xd7 |
| 12. | dxc5  | ♙xc5 |
| 13. | ♙e2   |      |

The chances are also equal after 13.♙d3 ♞hd8 14.♙e2 ♙e7 15.♙c2 h6 (15...♞d5 16.♙f4 g5 17.c4 ♞d4 18.♙xg5 ♞g4) 16.h3 ♞d5.

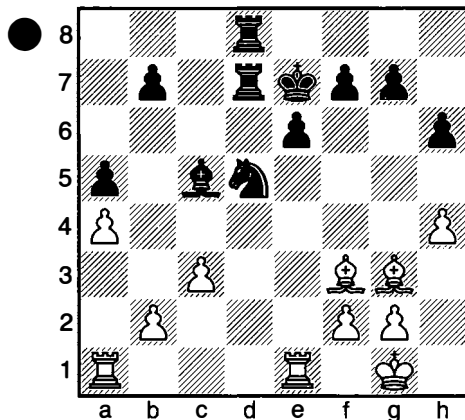
- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 13. | ... | ♞hd8 |
| 14. | a4  |      |



- |     |     |    |
|-----|-----|----|
| 14. | ... | a5 |
|-----|-----|----|

An important moment. Black begins play aimed at exchanging the dark-square bishops. Naturally, it is useful for him to fix the opponent's pawns on light squares.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 15. | ♙f4  | ♙e7  |
| 16. | ♙f3  | ♞d7  |
| 17. | 0-0  | ♞ad8 |
| 18. | ♞fel | h6   |
| 19. | h4   | ♘d5  |
| 20. | ♙g3  |      |



- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 20. | ... | ♙d6 |
|-----|-----|-----|

The concluding manoeuvre of Black's strategic plan. It is based on the tactical variation 21.♙xd5 ♙xg3 22.♙xe6 ♙xf2+, when he has no problems in the rook end-

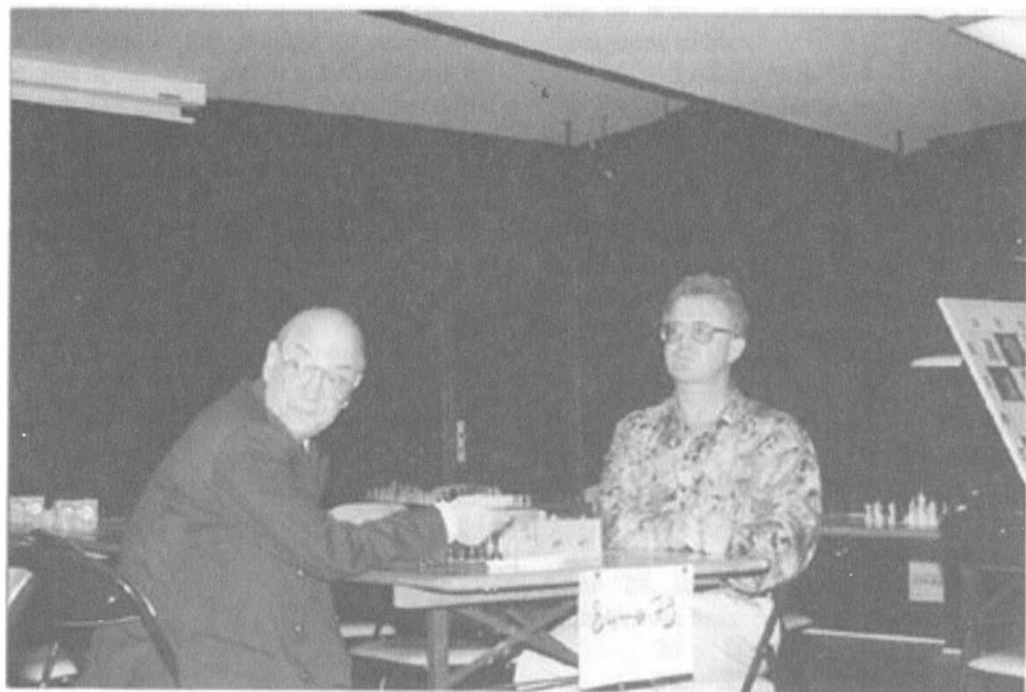
ing. 20...g5 21.hxg5 hxg5 22.c4 ♘b6  
 23.♙e5 ♙d4 was also worth considering.

21. ♙xd6+ ♙xd6

22. g3  $\frac{1}{2}$ - $\frac{1}{2}$



**Simultaneous of Iossif Dorfman**



**Victor Korchnoi – Iossif Dorfman**

### 3. MODIFICATION OF THE PAWN STRUCTURE

L. Polugayevsky – M. Herink  
Marianske Lazne 1959

It would be naïve to expect that the analysis of a position can be exhausted by the study of only one of its strategic elements.

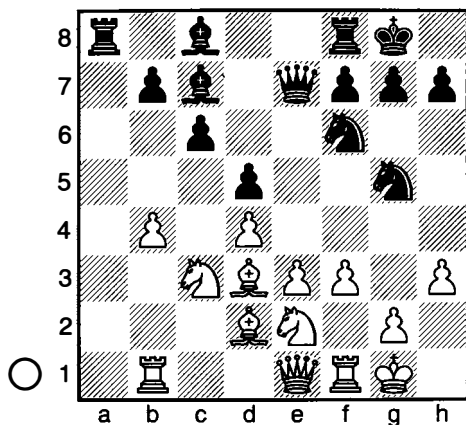
In this chapter the evolution of the pawn structure is presented as the main factor. Its role is hard to over-estimate, since it **influences the king's position, the power of the pieces (and even frequently determines it), the evaluation of the endgame,** and so on.

The accent is placed on the evolution of the type of centre and on possible breakthroughs. The ability to transform a closed or semi-open position into an open one became a skill in the Staunton era, and it remains this even today.

From this point of view, the Makogonov-Botvinnik game (p.97) is completely paradoxical!

On the other hand, it is surprising how a seemingly unprepossessing move (such as a2-a3 in the game Dorfman-Verdier, p.102) can have such destructive consequences.

In the pages of this chapter the reader will be able to sense under what conditions the **search for compensation for a damaged pawn structure** in one of the upper rungs of the descending scale is the correct strategy. And, obviously, what are the dangers of inactive play in such a situation.



This is a position that often arises in the variation of the Nimzo-Indian Defence with 4. ♘ge2.

White his last manoeuvre 18... ♗c7 Black has prepared an attack on the opponent's king by ♜d6. The static evaluation is advantageous to him:

$$1. \bar{=} 2. = 3. \pm 4. \bar{=}$$

The Russian grandmaster makes a timely breakthrough in the centre.

$$19. e4 \quad dxe4$$

$$20. fxe4 \quad \text{♘}gxe4$$

The decisive mistake. Black could have fought on with 20...h6, although even in this case White has an undisputed advantage.

$$21. \text{♘}xe4 \quad \text{♘}xe4$$

$$22. \text{♘}c3 \quad f5$$

The counter-attacking attempt 22... ♜d6 was insufficient in view of 23. ♜xe4 ♜h2+ 24. ♖f2 ♗g3+ 25. ♖f3 f5 26. ♜f4.

$$23. \text{♘}xe4 \quad fxe4$$

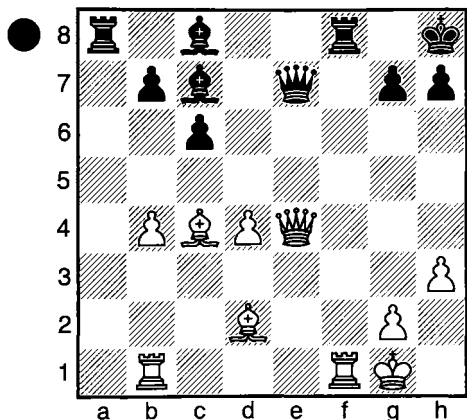
$$24. \text{♗}c4+ \quad \text{♖}h8$$

After 24... ♗e6 25. ♜xe4 ♞fe8 26. ♞fe1 Black would have come under a mortal pin.

$$25. \text{♜}xe4 \text{ (D)} \quad \text{♗}d6$$

$$26. \text{♞}xf8+ \quad \text{♜}xf8$$

$$27. \text{♞}f1 \quad \text{♜}e7$$

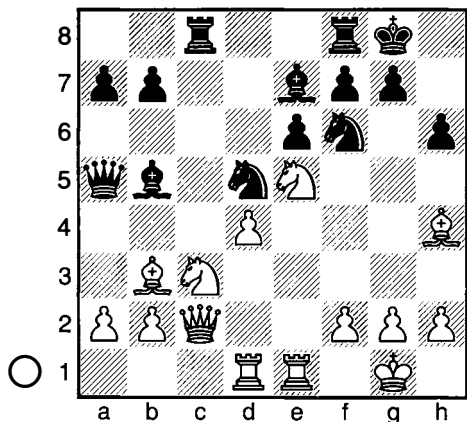


Position after 25. ♖xe4

27... ♖d8 would have lost quickly to  
 28. ♗g5 ♖d7 29. ♗d3 g6 30. ♗f6+.  
 28. ♖xe7 ♗xe7  
 29. ♖e1 1-0

### Em. Lasker – J. Capablanca

Havana (m/10) 1921

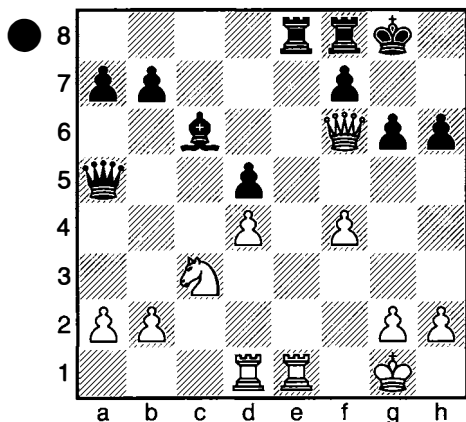


Usually in this type of position the static evaluation suggests an advantage for Black due to the pawn structure:

$$1. = 2. = 3. \bar{=} 4. \bar{=}$$

The dynamic candidate moves here are 17. ♗xf6 and 17. ♗xd5. Let us study the first possibility:

17. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 (17... ♗xf6 leads to disaster after 18. ♗g6 ♖fe8 19. ♖xe6 fxe6 20. ♗xe6+ ♗h7 21. ♗f8+ ♗h8 22. ♖h7+ ♗xh7 23. ♗g6 mate) 18. ♗xd5 exd5 19. ♖f5 ♗c6 20. ♗g4 ♗g5 21. f4 g6 22. ♖e5 ♖ce8 23. ♗f6+ ♗xf6 24. ♖xf6.



Now the static evaluation is inclined in favour of White:

$$1. \pm 2. \pm 3. = 4. \pm$$

To neutralise this superiority Black should exchange the queens, and after 24... ♖d8! 25. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 26. ♖e7 ♖fe8 27. ♖de1 ♗f8 a draw becomes inevitable.

The game continued as follows:

17. ♗xd5?

After this move, which simplifies the position, all the danger for Black disappears and he firmly seizes the initiative.

17. ... ♗xd5

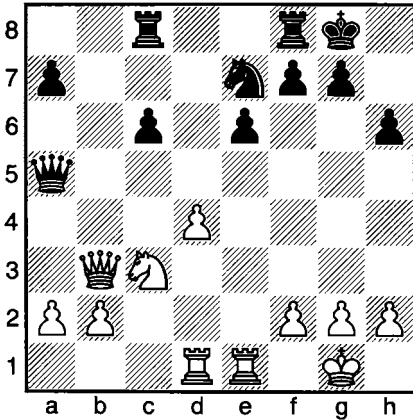
18. ♗xe7 ♗xe7

19. ♖b3 ♗c6

19... ♗a6 was also quite solid.

20. ♗xc6 bxc6

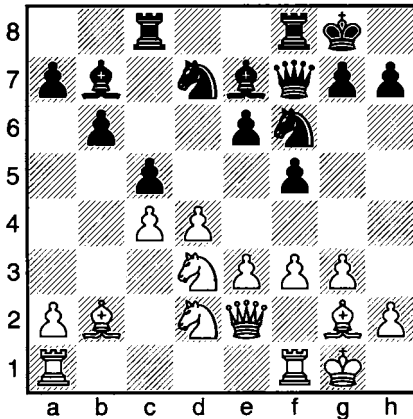
White's weaknesses are more susceptible to attack. Thanks to rather sluggish play by Lasker, the Cuban grandmaster was able to convert his superiority.



Position after 20...bxc6

Recently I became interested in a position from the following game.

**M.Makogonov – M.Botvinnik**  
12th USSR Championship, Moscow 1940



It is undoubtedly a critical one, since White has to make up his mind regarding a modification of the pawn structure and a possible exchange of pieces.

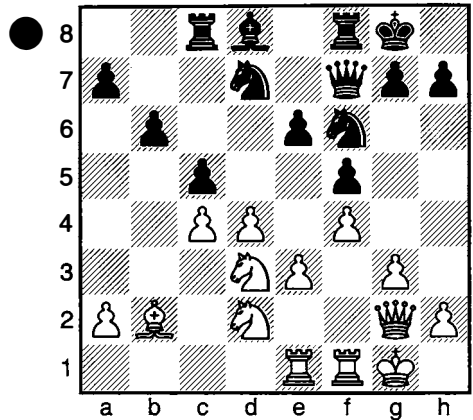
The static evaluation is positive for Black:

1. = 2. = 3. ≠ 4. ≠

Makogonov's direct 16. ♖e5 does nothing to change the character of the play, since after Botvinnik's reply 16... ♗e8 White's dynamic possibilities are exhausted.

He missed the excellent idea 16. ♗ae1. This move exposes the weakness of the bishop at e7. Now White's idea is to break through with 17.e4 cxd4 18.exf5. The lack of coordination between the black pieces prevents him from successfully setting up a defensive line:

- A) 16... ♗ce8 17.e4 cxd4 18.e5 ♖h5 19.g4;
- B) 16... ♗d6 17.e4 cxd4 18.e5;
- C) 16... ♗d8 17.f4 ♗xg2 18. ♗xg2 (D)

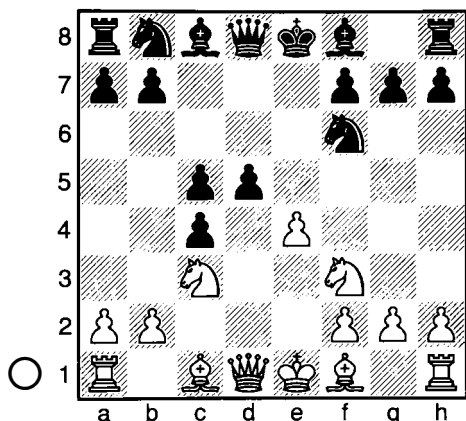


In this last variation White's chances are 'only' clearly better.

**A.Zlochevsky – G.Laketic**  
Italy 1999

- |    |     |          |
|----|-----|----------|
| 1. | d4  | d5       |
| 2. | c4  | dx c4    |
| 3. | ♖f3 | ♖f6      |
| 4. | ♖c3 | c5       |
| 5. | d5  | e6       |
| 6. | e4  | exd5 (D) |

According to modern theory White should aim for the initiative in the irrational complications after 7.e5 ♖fd7 8. ♗g5, but one has to be a great optimist to choose this continuation without thorough preparation. Thus in the variation 8...f6 9. ♗xd5 fxg5 10. ♗xc4 White sacrifices a piece, with consequences that are hard to forecast.



Position after 6...exd5

## 7. exd5

Here the blockade offsets the protected passed pawn and Black maintains the dynamic balance.

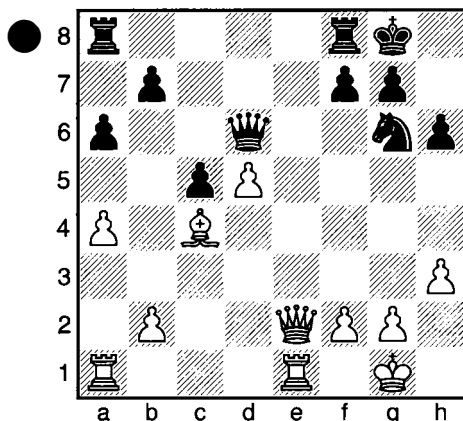
- |          |      |
|----------|------|
| 7. ...   | a6   |
| 8. a4    | ♙d6  |
| 9. ♙xc4  | 0-0  |
| 10. 0-0  | ♙g4  |
| 11. h3   | ♙xf3 |
| 12. ♖xf3 | ♘bd7 |
| 13. ♙g5  | h6   |
| 14. ♙h4  | ♘e5  |
| 15. ♖e2  | ♘g6  |
| 16. ♙xf6 | ♖xf6 |
| 17. ♘e4  | ♖e5  |
| 18. ♘xd6 | ♖xd6 |
| 19. ♖f1  |      |

At the end of a series of forced moves the game reaches a critical point.

**The static evaluation depends on the tandems.** Thus if Black can get rid of the rooks, his superiority will become clear.

In the variation 19...♖ac8 20.♖a3 ♖c7 21.♖e3 White squeezes the maximum out of the position, but the opponent maintains the balance by continuing 21...b5 22.axb5 axb5 23.♙xb5 ♖xd5.

A similar idea simplifies the play after the immediate break 19...b5 20.axb5 axb5 21.♖xa8 ♖xa8 22.♙xb5 ♖xd5.



- |         |      |
|---------|------|
| 19. ... | ♔f4? |
| 20. ♖e4 | ♖ab8 |
| 21. a5  |      |

Usually in chess the defensive resources are very great. However, situations occur where simple inaccuracies lead to disaster. White has the better ending thanks to the immunity of his d-pawn and the weakness of the opponent's queenside, and after the following inappropriate reply Black's position deteriorates.

- 21...b5? 22.axb6 ♖xb6 23.b3 ♖d8 24.♖e3 ♖b8 25.♖f3 ♘g6 26.♖e1 ♖d7 27.♖g4 ♖d8 28.♖fe3 ♘h7 29.♖e8 ♖c7 30.h4 ♖e7 31.♖xe7 ♘xe7 32.♖e4+ 1-0

### E.Arlandi – G.Borgo

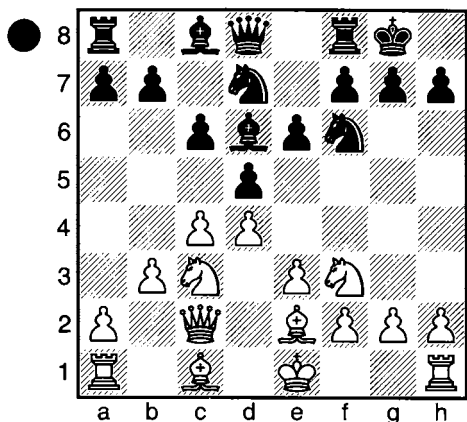
Italian Championship 1998

- |            |      |
|------------|------|
| 1. d4      | d5   |
| 2. c4      | e6   |
| 3. ♘c3     | c6   |
| 4. e3      | ♔f6  |
| 5. ♘f3     | ♘bd7 |
| 6. ♖c2     | ♙d6  |
| 7. b3      | 0-0  |
| 8. ♙e2 (D) |      |

At the present time in this theoretical position the continuation 8...b6 9.0-0 ♙b7 10.♙b2 c5 11.cx d5 exd5 12.♖ad1 ♖c8 13.dxc5 bxc5 14.♘h4 g6 15.♘f3 ♖e7



16. ♖fe1 a6 17.h3 ♜fd8 is becoming increasingly popular.

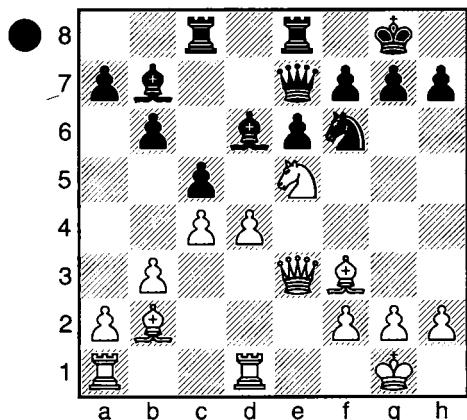


Position after 8...♗e2

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 8.  | ...  | ♗e7  |
| 9.  | 0-0  | ♞e8  |
| 10. | ♞d1  | b6   |
| 11. | e4   | ♟xe4 |
| 12. | ♟xe4 | dx4  |
| 13. | ♜xe4 | ♙b7  |
| 14. | ♟e5  | ♞f6  |
| 15. | ♜e3  |      |

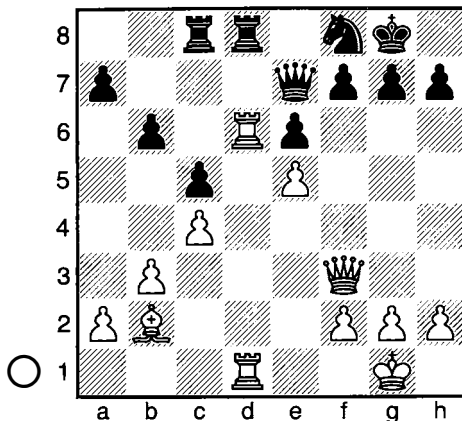
A logical idea, ensuring the exchange of bishops on the long diagonal.

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 15. | ... | c5   |
| 16. | ♙b2 | ♞ac8 |
| 17. | ♙f3 |      |



17. ... ♙xf3  
Here or on the next move 17...♜c7 came into consideration.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 18. | ♜xf3 | ♙xe5 |
| 19. | dx4  | ♟d7  |
| 20. | ♞d6  | ♟f8  |
| 21. | ♞ad1 | ♞e8  |



The end of a series of forced moves. Even visually White's advantage is undisputed. **But is it static?** In fact, after the exchange of rooks Black will acquire the queen + knight tandem, which is advantageous in view of the fixed pawn structure.

As a consequence of this, White should seek an advantage in the first element of the descending scale. It seems to me that the demands of the position are met by 22.♜g4 ♟g6 (22...♞d7 23.h4 ♞cd8 24.h5) 23.g3 ♞xd6 24.exd6 ♜d7 25.h4. Here the **static weakness of the black king** comes to the fore.

22. g3

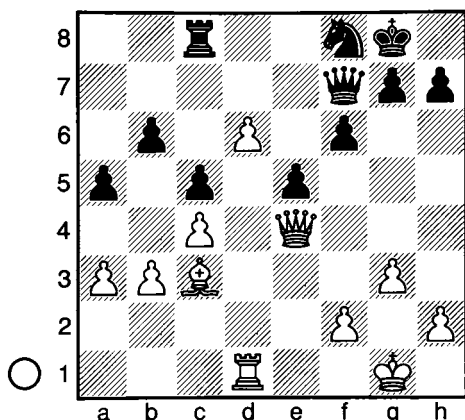
A loss of time and the first false step.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 22. | ...  | ♞xd6 |
| 23. | exd6 | ♜d7  |
| 24. | ♜g4  |      |

Here the advance of the h-pawn does not bring any appreciable dividends after 24.h4 f6 25.h5 h6.

- |     |     |    |
|-----|-----|----|
| 24. | ... | e5 |
| 25. | ♜e4 | f6 |
| 26. | a3  | a5 |

27. ♔c3 ♖f7

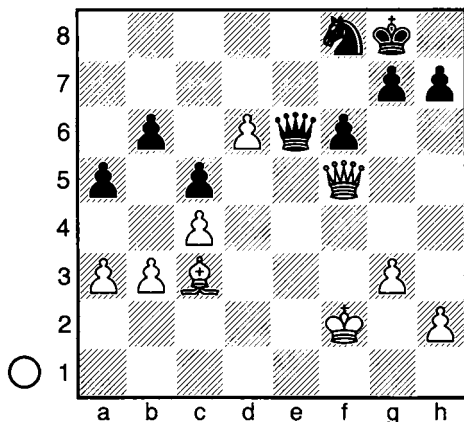


28. f4?

Another conceptual mistake at a critical point of the game. It is pointless for White to weaken the static position of his king.

The other dynamic try 28.d7 ♖d8 (28... ♗xd7 29. ♖b7 ♖d8 30. ♖c7 ♖e7 31.b4) 29. ♖c6 ♖xd7 30. ♖d5 was appropriate and timely. White could also have seriously considered the **exchange of queens** after 28. ♖d5 ♖xd5 29. ♖xd5 ♗f7 30.f4.

28.	...	exf4
29.	♖xf4	♗d7
30.	♖e1	♖e8
31.	♖xe8+	♖xe8
32.	♖f5	♗f8
33.	♗f2	♖e6



34. ♖d3?

With such a statically weak king White should have tried to save the game in the minor piece ending by 34. ♖xe6+ ♗xe6 35. ♗f3 f5 36.g4:

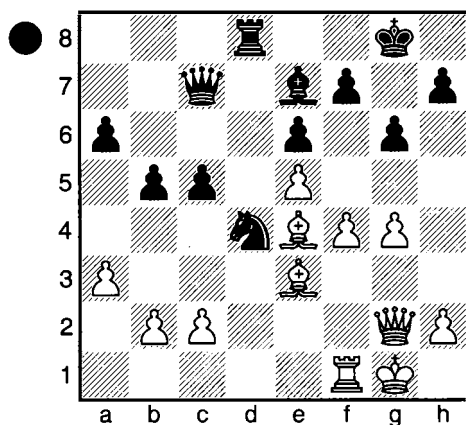
A) 36...fxg4+ 37. ♗xg4 g6 38. ♗f3 ♗f7 39. ♗e4 ♗e8 40. ♗d5 ♗d7 41. ♗e5 (41.b4 axb4 42.axb4 ♗f4+ 43. ♗e4 ♗e2);

B) 36...g6 37.gxf5 gxf5.

34... ♗d7 35. ♗g2 h6 36.b4 axb4 37.axb4 cxb4 38. ♗xb4 ♗f7 39. ♖c2 ♖e5 40.h4 ♖d4 41. ♖f5 ♗e5 42. ♖h5+ g6 43. ♖xh6 ♖e4+ 44. ♗g1 ♖b1+ 45. ♗g2 ♖e4+ 46. ♗g1 ♖b1+ 47. ♗g2 ♖xb4 48. ♖h7+ ♗e6 49. ♖g8+ ♗f5 50. ♖d5 ♖c5 51.g4+ ♗xg4 52. ♖e6+ f5 0-1

## A. Onischuk – O. Cvitan

Yerevan (Olympiad) 1996



The position of the black king looks solid and the static evaluation confirms the visual assessment:

$$1. \bar{\neq} 2. \pm 3. \pm 4. =$$

The material balance in this situation depends on the pawn structure and the presence of the queens on the board. I consider the general strategic course for Black to be to keep the queens on, and to aim to fix the pawn structure and exchange the dark-square bishops (and, as a consequence, acquire the favourable queen + knight tandem).

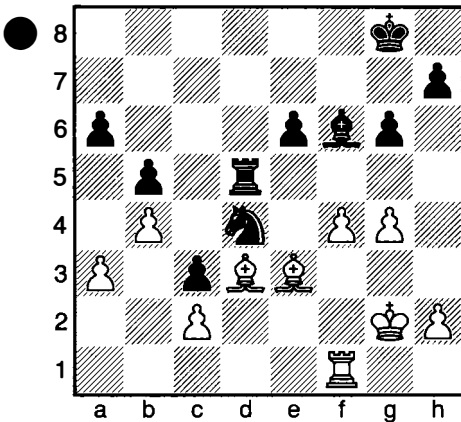
24...b4! 25.a4 ♖a5 26.b3 c4 can be recommended. Black has no problems, but the same cannot be said about his opponent, since 27.♞d1 runs into the piece sacrifice 27...cxb3 28.♞xd4 b2.

However, the Croatian grandmaster chose

24. ... c4?

This ill-considered decision leads to a deterioration of Black's position.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 25. | ♖f2  | c3   |
| 26. | b4   | ♖c4  |
| 27. | ♙d3  | ♖d5  |
| 28. | ♖g2  | f5   |
| 29. | exf6 | ♙xf6 |
| 30. | ♖xd5 | ♞xd5 |
| 31. | ♙g2  |      |

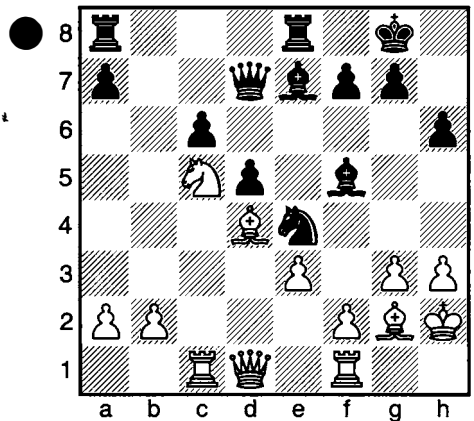


The situation has changed radically. With the disappearance of the queens the question of the kings' protection is no longer relevant, and it has also become impossible for Black to create the queen + knight tandem. From now on the pawn structure is liable to evolve advantageously for White and the role of the bishops has increased greatly. The static evaluation has become favourable for White in all the elements and Black is no longer able to create a critical position. The Ukrainian grandmaster won on the 48<sup>th</sup> move.

**M.Gurevich – R.Ponomariov**

Belfort 1998

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | c4   | e6   |
| 2.  | d4   | d5   |
| 3.  | ♘c3  | c5   |
| 4.  | cxd5 | exd5 |
| 5.  | ♘f3  | ♘c6  |
| 6.  | g3   | ♘f6  |
| 7.  | ♙g2  | ♙e7  |
| 8.  | 0-0  | 0-0  |
| 9.  | ♙g5  | cxd4 |
| 10. | ♘xd4 | h6   |
| 11. | ♙e3  | ♞e8  |
| 12. | ♞c1  | ♙g4  |
| 13. | h3   | ♙e6  |
| 14. | ♙h2  | ♖d7  |
| 15. | ♘xc6 | bxc6 |
| 16. | ♘a4  | ♙f5  |
| 17. | ♙c5  | ♙d8  |
| 18. | ♙d4  | ♘e4  |
| 19. | e3   | ♙e7  |
| 20. | ♘c5  |      |



A critical variation of the Tarrasch Defence has been played. Black has to make up his mind about an exchange. Since the static evaluation is disastrous for him, his counterplay must be directed against the white king.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 20. | ...  | ♙xc5 |
| 21. | ♙xc5 | ♖b7  |

## 22. ♔d4

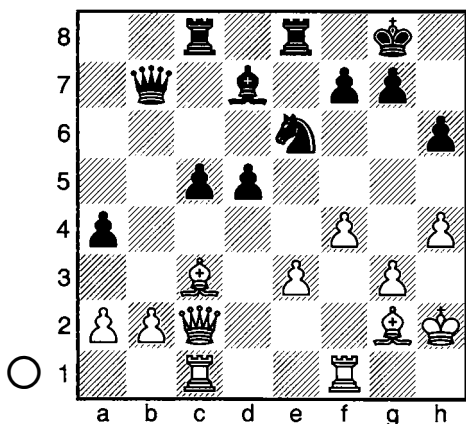
22. ♖d4 ♘g5 23. h4 ♘e6 24. ♖d2 a5 25. b3 ♗b5 26. ♔d4 came seriously into consideration.

22. ... a5  
23. ♗a4 ♔d7  
24. ♗c2 ♖ac8  
25. f3

At the present moment it is important to find the best square for the knight. It can go to d6, in order to then increase the pressure on the e3 and g3 squares. But probably Black should have acted in the spirit of this dynamic opening with 25...c5 26.fxe4 (26. ♔xg7 ♘xg3 27. ♔xg3 ♔xg7 28. ♖c3+ f6 29. ♔h2 ♗b4 demands of White a certain accuracy) 26...cxd4 27. ♗f2 ♔b5 28. ♖xc8 ♖xc8 29. ♖d1 dxe3 30. ♗xe3 dxe4 31. ♔xe4 ♔c6 and the white king is in danger. I assume that the Ukrainian player did not want to allow the exchange sacrifice after 26. ♔xg7 ♘xg3 27. ♔xh6 ♘xf1+ 28. ♖xf1, but in the final position Black's chances seem to me to be better.

25. ... ♘g5  
26. h4 ♘e6  
27. ♔c3 a4  
28. f4 c5

The battle has reached its height. Black strengthens his pawn structure and simultaneously prepares to bring his bishop onto the long diagonal.



## 29. f5

One could have expected of White the more ambitious 29. ♖d2, but analysis shows that after 29...♔c6 (29...♘c7 30. ♔e5) 30.f5 ♘c7 Black maintains the balance in all variations:

A) 31. ♔a5 ♘a6 32. f6 d4 33. ♔xc6 ♖xc6 34. exd4 ♗b5 35. ♖ce1 ♖xe1 36. ♖xe1 ♗xf6 37. d5 (37. ♔c3 ♖d6 38. ♖e4 cxd4 39. ♖xd4 ♖e6=) 37...♖d6 38. a3 c4 39. ♖d1 ♗e8 40. ♗c2 ♗b5 and the two players have to repeat moves;

B) 31. f6 g6 (31...♘e6? 32. fxg7 d4 33. exd4 ♔xg2 34. ♗xh6 ♘xg7 35. d5 f6 36. ♔xg2 ♗xd5+ 37. ♔g1 ♖e2 38. ♖f2 ♖xf2 39. ♔xf2±) 32. e4 (32. ♔a5 ♘e6 and Black has the prospect of a counterattack on the light squares) 32...♔h7 33. h5 d4 34. hxg6+ fxg6 35. ♔a5 ♘e6=.

29. ... ♘d4  
30. exd4 cxd4  
31. ♖d2 dxc3  
32. bxc3

Things would have been rather more difficult for Black after 32. ♖xc3 ♔b5 33. ♖xc8 (the forcing variation 33. ♔xd5 ♗d7 34. ♖f2 ♖xc3 35. bxc3 ♖d8 36. ♖f4 ♔c6 37. ♔xf7+ ♔xf7 38. ♖d4 ♗e7 39. ♖xd8 ♗e4 40. ♔g1 ♗h1+ 41. ♔f2 ♗g2+ 42. ♔e1 ♗h1+ leads only to perpetual check) 33...♗xc8 34. ♖f2 ♔c4 35. f6 ♔xa2 36. fxg7 ♗e6.

32. ... ♗b5

The position is completely equal. The following moves were of little interest and not at all obligatory.

33. ♖f2 d4 34. cxd4 ♖xc1 35. ♗xc1 ♖e2 36. ♖xe2 ♗xe2 37. a3 ♔xf5 38. ♗c6 ♔h7 39. ♗f3 ♗xf3 40. ♔xf3 ♔d7 41. ♔g2 ♔g6 42. ♔d5 f5 43. ♔f3 ½-½

## I. Dorfman – P. Verdier

France 1997

1. ♘f3 ♘f6  
2. c4 c5  
3. ♘c3 e6

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 4. | g3  | b6  |
| 5. | g2  | b7  |
| 6. | 0-0 | e7  |
| 7. | b3  | 0-0 |
| 8. | b2  | d6  |
| 9. | e3  | bd7 |

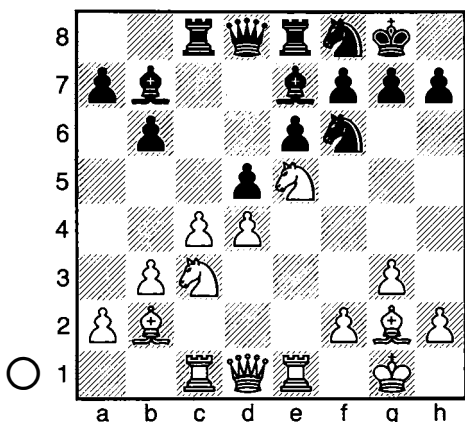
Here 9...e4 seems sounder.

- |     |      |     |
|-----|------|-----|
| 10. | d4   | cx4 |
| 11. | exd4 | d5  |
| 12. | e5   | c8  |
| 13. | c1   | e8  |
| 14. | e1   | f8  |

choose 16.cxd5, forcing the reply 16...exd5 17.dxd5 exd5 18.xc8 xc8 19.exd5 exd5 20.f3 e6 21.d3 d7 22.f4 d8 23.dxd5 Black is lost.

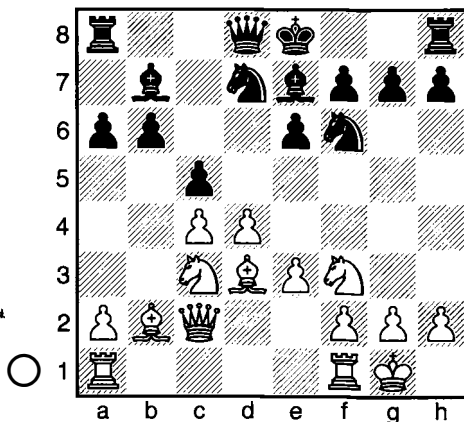
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 16. | cx4  | ex4  |
| 17. | dxd5 | dxd5 |
| 18. | xc8  | xc8  |
| 19. | c6   | d6   |
| 20. | exd5 | e6   |
| 21. | g2   |      |

and White converted his advantage.



### T.Petrosian – G.Pfeiffer

Leipzig (Olympiad) 1960



White has harmoniously deployed his forces, but the static evaluation is still advantageous to his opponent:

1. = 2. = 3. 4.

The dynamic continuations 15.g4 g6 16.g5 d7 17.cxd5 dxex5 and 15.a4 d8d7 16.dxd7 wxd7 17.c5 xc6 do not bring any particular dividends.

15. a3

White begins carrying out the plan of modifying the pawn structure by a2-a3, b3-b4 and c4-c5.

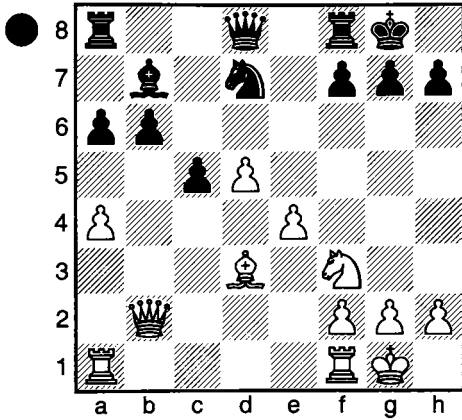
15. ... a6?

The opponent falls into a tactical trap. 15...a8 was more tenacious, although analysis shows that even in this case White has a considerable advantage. He can

I am always happy to present examples from Tigran Petrosian's games, since he had an excellent feeling for dynamic play. The static evaluation demands dynamic action of White:

1. = 2. = 3. 4.

The candidate moves 12.e5 and 12.d5 suggest themselves. After 12.d5! exd5 13.dxd5 (but not 13.cxd5 b5 with active counterplay and the possibility of a blockade by ...d6) 13...dxd5 14.cxd5 xf6 15.e4 xb2 16.wxb2 0-0 17.a4 (D) White has a clear advantage.



after 17.a4

12. ♖e5      cxd4

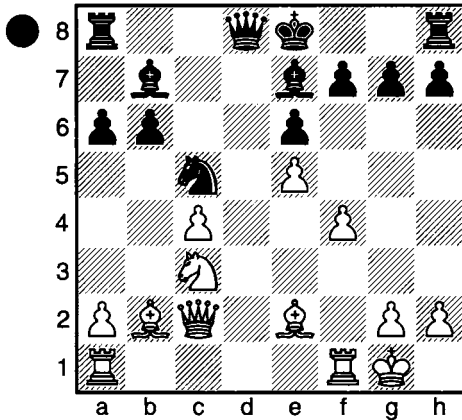
Black rightly decides to get rid of the active enemy knight, since after 12...0-0 13.♖ad1 White's pressure becomes threatening.

13.    cxd4      ♖xe5

14.    dxe5      ♖d7

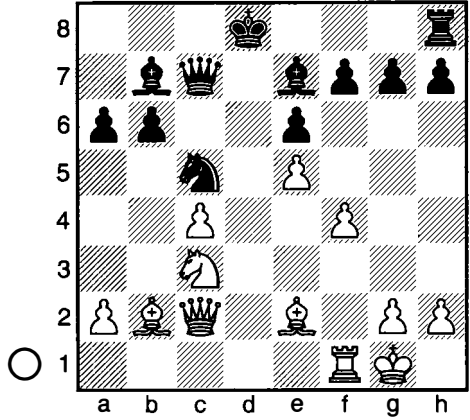
15.    f4        ♖c5

16.    ♕e2



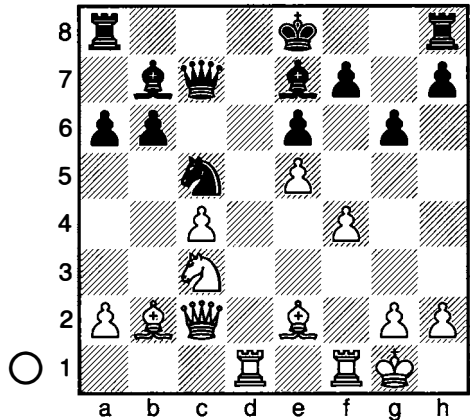
16. ...      g6?

A serious mistake in a critical position. Black should have chosen between 16...f5 17.exf6 ♕xf6 and 16...♖c7 17.♖ad1 (after 17.f5 0-0-0 18.fxe6 fxe6 19.♖f7 ♖b3!! 20.axb3 ♕c5+ 21.♖f2 ♖hf8 22.♖af1 ♖c6 23.♕f3 ♖xf3 Black wins) 17...♖d8 18.f5 (18.♖xd8+ runs into 18...♕xd8:



when the black king finds shelter on the queenside; I would venture to suggest that it was this reply that Petrosian missed) 18...♖xd1 19.♕xd1 0-0 20.f6 gxf6 21.exf6 ♕d6.

17.    ♖ad1      ♖c7



After a series of forced moves a critical position has been reached. On this occasion the static evaluation is catastrophic for White:

1. ♖ 2. = 3. ♖ 4. ♖

In such positions there should be no psychological problem over coming to a decision. Remember that fortune favours the bold, and so, without hesitation:

18.    ♖d5!      exd5

- 19. cxd5 ♖c8
- 20. e6 0-0
- 21. ♖c3 f6
- 22. d6 ♘a4

The end of a series of forced moves. White can go into a better ending after 23. ♖d4 ♙xd6 (23... ♖c6 24. ♙f3 ♖xd6 25. ♙xb7 does not leave Black any hope) 24. ♖xa4 ♙c5+ 25. ♗h1 ♖c6 26. ♖xc6 ♙xc6. I suspect that Petrosian reached this position in his calculations before making his 18<sup>th</sup> move. Now it is possible to take a breather and clarify the specific nuances.

- 23. ♖xc8 ♜fxc8
- 24. ♙a1 ♜c2

White also has a significant advantage after 24... ♙f8 25.e7.

- 25. dxe7 ♜xe2
- 26. ♜d8+ ♔g7
- 27. ♜c1 ♜xe6
- 28. ♜c7 ♔h6
- 29. ♙xf6 ♙e4
- 30. ♙g5+ 1-0

**V.Kramnik – V.Ivanchuk**

Dortmund 1997

- 1. ♘f3 ♘f6
- 2. c4 c6
- 3. ♘c3 d5
- 4. d4 e6
- 5. e3 ♘bd7
- 6. ♖c2 b6

A rare continuation. The Ukrainian grandmaster is hoping for comfortable equality, since his position is free of any weaknesses. However, in such situations the possibility of an unfavourable type of centre should not be discounted...

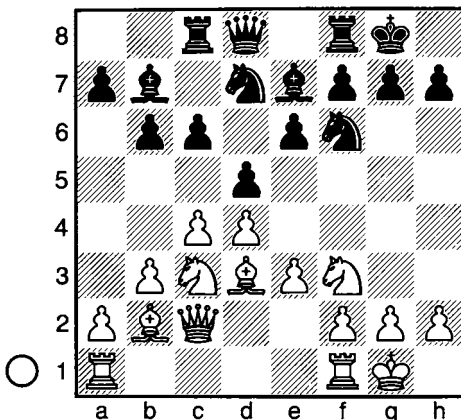
- 7. ♙d3 ♙b7
- 8. 0-0 ♙e7
- 9. b3 ♜c8
- 10. ♙b2

The important alternative 10. ♖e2 0-0 11. ♙b2 c5 12. ♜fd1 cxd4 13. exd4 ♜e8 14. ♘e5 dxc4 15. bxc4 ♘xe5 16. dxe5 ♘d7 17. ♙xh7+ ♗xh7 18. ♖d3+ ♗g8 19. ♖xd7 ♖xd7 20. ♜xd7 ♙a6 21. ♜xa7 ♙xc4 leads to

a position where Black has compensation for his minimal material deficit.

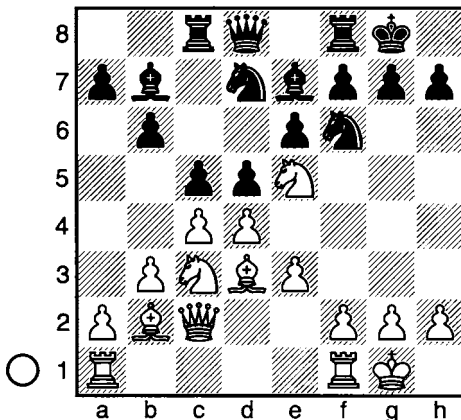
- 10. ... 0-0

Ivanchuk decided on 10...c5 11.cxd5 cxd4 12.dxe6 dxc3 13.exd7+ ♘xd7 14. ♙xc3 ♙b4 15. ♙c4 ♙xf3 16.gxf3 ♙xc3 17. ♖xc3 ♖g5+ 18. ♗h1 b5 19. ♖a5!, as a result of which his position became hopeless.



For the moment White has no static advantage and he can fight for one only by

- 11. ♘e5 c5



- 12. ♜ad1

An unsatisfactory alternative is 12.cxd5 cxd4 (12...exd5 13. ♘xd7±) 13. ♘xd7 (after 13.exd4 ♙xd5 Black stands better) 13... ♖xd7 14.dxe6 ♖c6-+.

12. ... cxd4  
 13. exd4 dxc4  
 14. bxc4 ♖e8  
 15. f4 ♜f8  
 16. ♖f2 ♜g6

After 16...♗b4 17.f5 White has the initiative.

17. ♔h1 ♖c7  
 18. f5 ♜xe5  
 19. dxe5 ♖xe5  
 20. ♜d5 ♖xh2+  
 21. ♔xh2 ♜g4+  
 22. ♔g1 ♜xf2  
 23. ♜xe7+

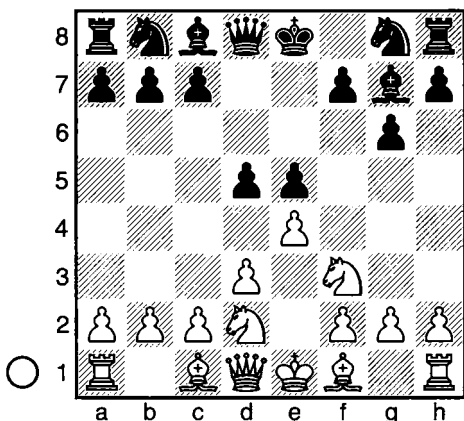
Black's position has become critical.

**Analysis.**

### I.Dorfman – M.Godena

Mondariz (Zonal Tournament) 2000

1. ♜f3 d5  
 2. d3 g6  
 3. ♜bd2 ♗g7  
 4. e4 e5



With White the Italian player invariably employs the fianchetto against the Pirc Defence. Here, in aiming for a familiar set-up, he is forced to take an early walk with his queen. This affects the static evaluation, since after the unavoidable advance of Black's f-pawn his king is weakened.

5. exd5 ♖xd5

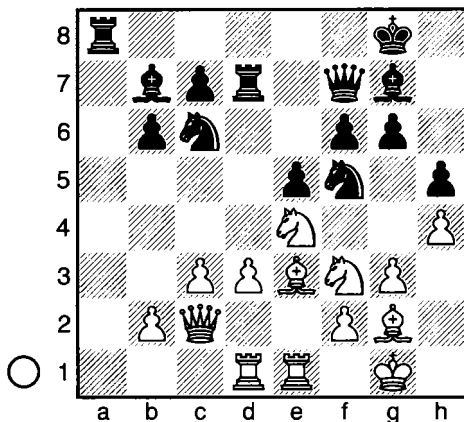
6. g3 ♜c6  
 7. ♗g2 ♜ge7  
 8. 0-0 f6  
 9. ♖e1 ♖f7  
 10. a4

The tempting play against the black king, stuck for an instant in the centre, does not achieve the desired result after 10.b4 ♜xb4 11.♗a3 ♜bc6 (11...a5 12.c3 ♜xd3 13.♖e3) 12.d4 0-0 13.dxe5 fx5.

10. ... 0-0  
 11. a5 ♖b8  
 12. ♜e4 ♖d8  
 13. ♖e2 b6  
 14. axb6 axb6  
 15. c3 ♗b7  
 16. h4 h5

Black gives up the idea of playing f6-f5.

17. ♗e3 ♜f5  
 18. ♖c2 ♖a8  
 19. ♖ad1 ♖d7



The time has come to deprive Black of his only static advantage – by getting rid of the backward d-pawn. White could also have considered protracted manoeuvring, by retreating his bishop to c1 and one of his knights to d2, and then playing b2-b4.

20. d4 exd4  
 21. ♜xd4 ♜cxd4  
 22. ♗xd4 ♜xd4  
 23. cxd4 ♖ad8  
 24. ♜xf6+ ♗xf6



25. ♖xb7 ♗xd4

26. ♖g2

White's position is somewhat better due to the difference in the degree of protection of the two kings. Severely short of time, Godena committed a number of inaccuracies, which led to his defeat on the 49th move.

### I.Dorfman – L.Fressinet

Nice 1999

This game was played in the last round of the traditional new year tournament and decided the destiny of the first prize.

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | ♖f3 | d5  |
| 2. | d3  | c5  |
| 3. | g3  | g6  |
| 4. | ♗g2 | ♗g7 |
| 5. | 0-0 | ♖c6 |
| 6. | c4  | e6  |

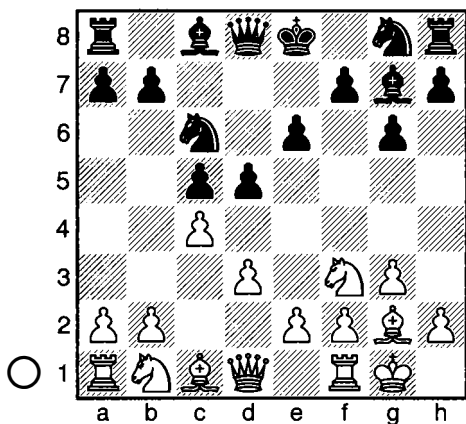
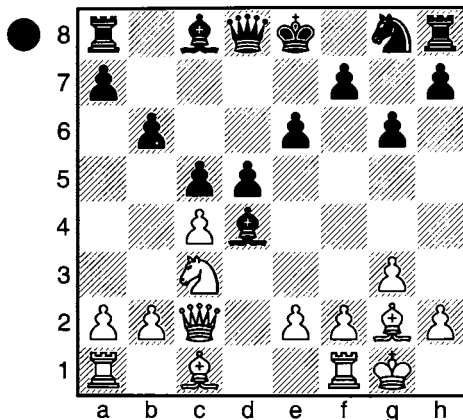
8. d4

White changes the type of centre and firmly seizes the initiative.

8. ... ♗xd4

9. ♖xd4 ♗xd4

9. ♖c3



- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 10. | .... | ♗b7  |
| 11. | cxd5 | exd5 |
| 12. | ♖a4+ | ♖f8  |

Possibly more tenacious was the defence involving the return of the pawn after 12...♖d7 13.♖xd7+ ♖xd7 14.♖xd5.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 13. | ♖d1  | ♖e7  |
| 14. | ♖xd4 | cxd4 |
| 15. | ♖xd4 | ♖g8  |
| 16. | ♗g5  | h6   |
| 17. | ♗f6  | ♖h7  |

17...♖h7 is not a move that one takes seriously, but nevertheless I will give one of the possible continuations: 18.♖e5 (18.♖d1) 18...♖c6 19.♖f4 g5 20.♖f3 ♖d6 21.♖xd5 ♖b4 22.♖e7+ ♖xe7 23.♗xe7 ♗xf3 24.♗xf3 ♖c2 25.♗xa8 ♖xa1 26.♗f6 h5 27.b3 ♖c2 28.♗e4 ♖b4 29.♗xh7+ ♖xh7 30.♗xg5 ♖xa2 31.♗d2.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 18. | ♗xh8 | ♖xh8 |
| 19. | ♖f4  | ♖e8  |
| 20. | ♖c7  | ♗c6  |
| 21. | ♖d1  |      |

A critical moment. If White simply develops, he risks ending up in a situation similar to the famous game Petrosian-Fischer, Match of the Century 1970. Searching for dynamic play, I managed to find an unexpected manoeuvre.

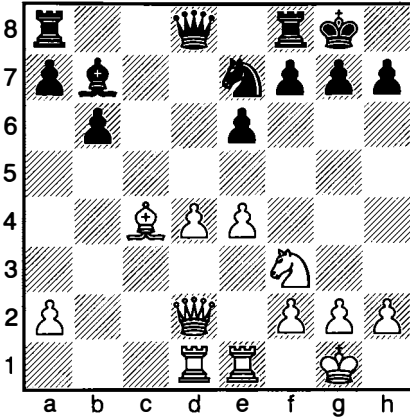
7. ♖c2 b6

In the variations 7...dxc4 8.♖xc4 and 7...d4 8.a3 a5 9.e3 Black is merely left to regret his 6th move...

And White soon converted his advantage.

**T.Petrosian – V.Korchnoi**

Il Ciocco (m/6) 1977



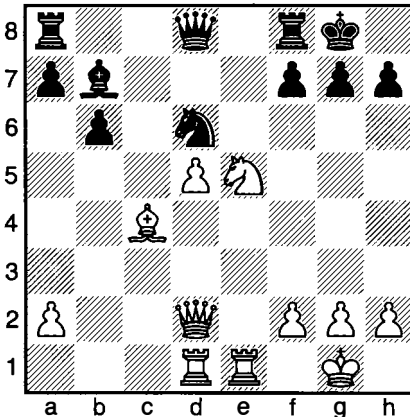
A set-up typical of the Tarrasch Defence Deferred. The static evaluation is advantageous to Black thanks to the pawn structure:

1. = 2. = 3. ♣ 4. ♣

As the position simplifies the role of the queenside pawn majority will become more significant. After the series of forced moves

- 15. d5                    exd5
- 16. exd5                 ♖f5
- 17. ♗e5                  ♗d6

the following critical position was reached.



The static evaluation has remained unchanged. **White must continue playing dynamically.** Thus the variation 18. ♗b3 ♗c8 19. ♗c6 ♗xc6 20. dxc6 ♗xc6 21. ♗a4 ♗c4 22. ♗b3 ♗c6 is inappropriate here. Petrosian exploits some tactical nuances.

18. ♗c6                 ♗xc6

This is sadly necessary. In the complications after 18... ♗xc4 19. ♗xd8 ♗xd2 20. ♗xb7 ♗c4 (20... ♗fb8 21. ♗e7 ♗f8 22. d6 ♗c4 23. ♗c7+–) 21. d6 White retains his superiority.

- 19. dxc6                 ♗xc4
- 20. ♗f4                  ♗d6
- 21. ♗xd6

The former world champion has unblocked the position and acquired a substantial advantage thanks to his powerful passed pawn and the possibility of an attack on the king.

- 21. ...                   ♗c7
- 22. g3                   h6
- 23. ♗e5                  ♗ac8
- 24. ♗d5                  ♗h7
- 25. ♗e4                  ♗g8
- 26. ♗g2                  a6

Now, when White's pieces have taken up active positions and are coordinating harmoniously, the time has come for him to set his sights on the enemy king.

- 27. h4 b5 28. g4 ♗h7 29. ♗e2 ♗h8 30. g5 h5
- 31. ♗d2 ♗fe8 32. ♗f3 g6 33. ♗d5 ♗f8
- 34. ♗f6 ♗e7 35. ♗d7 ♗e8 36. ♗xg6 ♗e5
- 37. ♗xh5                         mate

**T.Petrosian – B.Spassky**

Moscow 1971

(D)

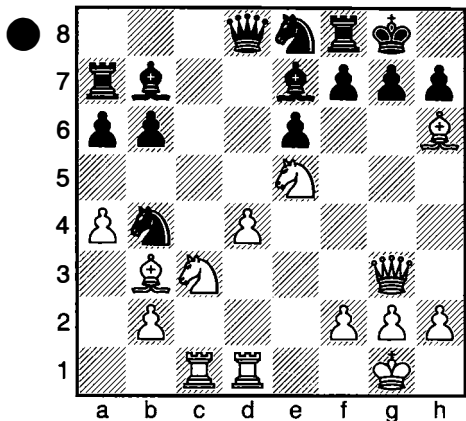
18. ...                   ♗h8

Black hopes to gain time by forcing the bishop to retreat and then establishing control of the d5 square after 19... ♗f6. The static evaluation is positive for him:

1. = 2. = 3. ♣ 4. ♣

What should White do? His chances are associated with the temporary lack of coordination in the opponent's position, the

awkward position of the rook at a7 being especially noticeable. Petrosian makes use of a propitious moment to change the unfavourable course of the play.



**19. d5! exd5**

Black's position would also have been hopeless after 19... $\text{exd5}$  20. $\text{exd5}$   $\text{exd5}$  21. $\text{exe3}$   $\text{exf6}$  22.a5  $\text{exc5}$  23. $\text{exxc5!}$   $\text{exe4}$  (23... $\text{bxc5}$  24. $\text{exxc5}$   $\text{exe4}$  25. $\text{exxf8}$  is unsatisfactory for Black) 24. $\text{exf3}$   $\text{exxc5}$  25. $\text{exxf7+}$ .

**20. ex3 ex8**

Suicidal. But to make a fair assessment of this manoeuvre let us analyse the other defences:

A) 20... $\text{exc5}$  21. $\text{exd5}$  (after 21. $\text{exxc5}$   $\text{bxc5}$  22. $\text{exe4}$   $\text{c4}$  23. $\text{exxc4}$   $\text{exe7}$  White loses material) 21... $\text{exd5}$  22. $\text{exxc5}$   $\text{bxc5}$  23. $\text{exxc5}$  and White regains the piece with an overwhelming position;

B) 20... $\text{exf6}$  21.a5  $\text{exc5}$  22. $\text{exa4}$   $\text{exe4}$  23. $\text{exf4}$   $\text{f6}$  24. $\text{axb6}$   $\text{fxe5}$  25. $\text{exxe4!}$  and Black is doomed.

**21. ex4 exd6**

In any case a pawn is lost after 21... $\text{exc5}$  22. $\text{exa5!}$ .

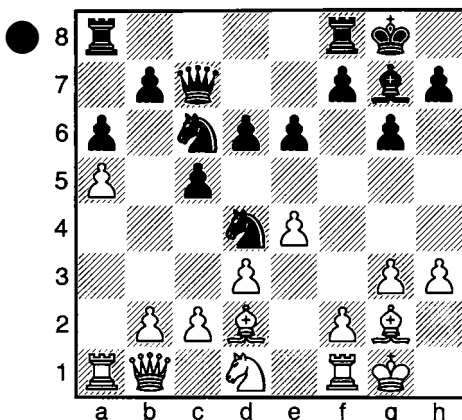
- 22.  $\text{exb6}$   $\text{exb8}$
- 23.  $\text{exa5}$   $\text{exf5}$
- 24.  $\text{exxb8}$   $\text{exxb8}$
- 25.  $\text{exxb7}$   $\text{exxb7}$

**26. a5**

The rest is of little interest. White converted his advantage 13 moves later.

In the following example we will study some instructive play by Fischer from the pinnacle of his career.

**V.Hort – R.Fischer**  
Palma de Mallorca 1970



This is a critical position, arising from the Closed Variation of the Sicilian Defence. At first sight White appears to have achieved much. He has the bishop pair and control of the weak b6 square. He only needs to carry out the series of moves  $\text{exe3}$ ,  $\text{exa2}$  and  $\text{c2-c3}$  for his advantage to become irreversible.

The static evaluation suggests dynamic play on the part of Black:

**1. = 2. ± 3. ± 4. ±**

Fischer's response is timely and highly elegant.

**16. ... c4!**

The other dynamic try 16... $\text{f5}$  was less effective in view of 17. $\text{f4}$ , not allowing, of course, the counterattack with 17... $\text{f4}$ .

**17. dxc4**

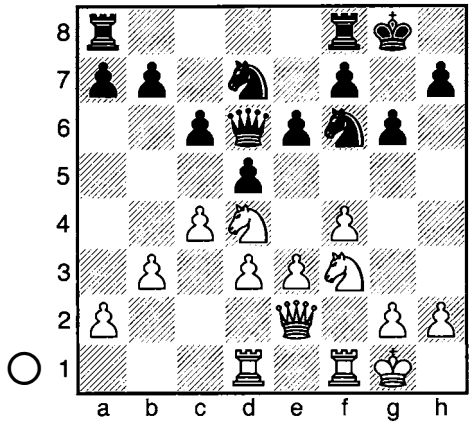
Forced, since otherwise after the exchange 17... $\text{cxd3}$  the black knight becomes impregnable in the centre of the board.

- 17. ... ♘e5
- 18. ♙e3 ♘xc4
- 19. ♖a4 ♗ac8
- 20. ♙xd4 ♙xd4
- 21. ♚a2 ♙f6
- 22. c3 ♙d8!
- 23. b4 ♙f6

The situation has changed radically. Thanks to the pawn structure it is now Black who has a static advantage, which he successfully converted.

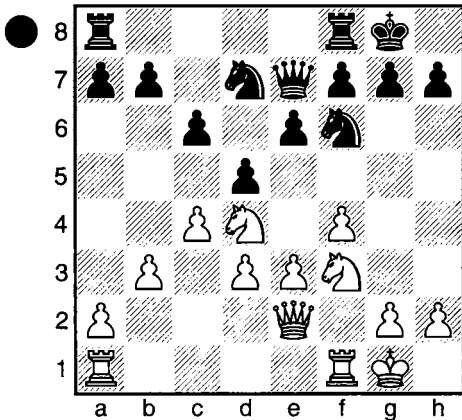
Even a grandmaster of world class is not guaranteed against mistakes, associated with the evolution of a complicated pawn structure. The following game is a vivid demonstration of this.

he can plan the exchange on c4 followed by e6-e5.



**U.Andersson – V.Hort**

Goteborg 1971



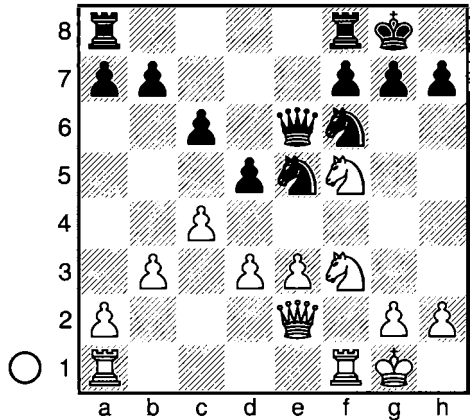
The static evaluation is advantageous to Black:

$$1. \bar{=} 2. = 3. = 4. \bar{=}$$

On the next move White can try 15.♘e5, leading to equality after 15...♗xe5 16.fxe5 ♘d7 17.♘f3 f6.

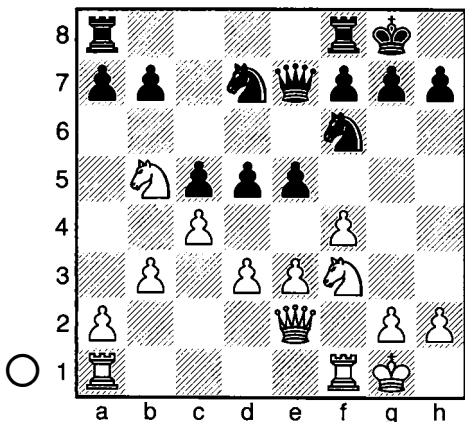
The most rigid play for Black is to maintain the advantageous character of the game by 14...♚d6 15.♗ad1 g6 (D). Later

14. ... c5  
 14...e5 15.fxe5 ♗xe5 16.♘f5 ♚e6 (D), trying to underline the static weakness of the white king, deserves careful study.



**15. ♘b5 e5 (D)**

In my view, 15...a6 16.♘c3 dxc4 17.bxc4 e5 18.fxe5 ♗xe5 19.e4 ♗ae8 20.♘d5 ♘xd5 21.cxd5 f5 was more in keeping with the character of the position.



**16. ♖fel**

The Czech grandmaster was probably hoping for favourable complications after 16.♘c7 exf4 (16...dxc4 17.♘xa8 cxd3 also looks good, with the initiative for the exchange) 17.♘xa8 ♖xa8 18.e4 dxe4 19.dxe4 ♘g4 with sufficient compensation (but on no account 19...♘xe4? 20.♖ad1 f5 21.♖d5 when the initiative is more important than the material).

But now, when the opposing forces have come into open contact, it is increasingly difficult to rely on a static base.

Even so...

The static evaluation is still the same. In order to try and preserve it, let us consider 16...♖ae8, 16...a6 and 16...dxc4.

A) 16...♖ae8 17.fxe5 ♘xe5 18.♘xe5 ♖xe5 19.♘xa7 ♖e7 20.♘b5 ♖fe8 with counter-play;

B) 16...a6:

B1) 17.♘c3 exf4 (17...♖d6 18.e4 d4 19.♘d5 ♖ae8 20.♘xf6+ ♖xf6 21.f5 ♖b8 22.g4) 18.exf4 ♖xe2 with equality (or 18...♖d6 19.♖e7 ♖xf4 20.♘xd5 ♘xd5 21.♖xd7 ♘b4 22.♖xb7 ♘xd3 23.♖e4 ♖ad8 as a try for an advantage);

B2) 17.♘c7 dxc4 18.♘xa8 (18.fxe5 cxd3 19.♖d2 ♖ad8 is clearly bad for White) 18...cxd3 19.♖d2 e4 and things are bad for White;

C) 16...dxc4 17.dxc4 a6 18.♘c3 ♖fe8 (18...exf4 19.exf4 ♖d6 20.♖d2 leads to complete equality) 19.e4 exf4 20.e5 ♘g4 21.♘d5 ♖d8 22.♖b2 ♖b8 with a clear advantage to Black.

Completely unexpectedly, Hort chooses a dynamic continuation, taking the play along other lines.

**16. ... e4??**

An inexplicable manoeuvre for a grandmaster of such calibre. The reader will probably accept my criticism after analysing the evolution of the static evaluation:

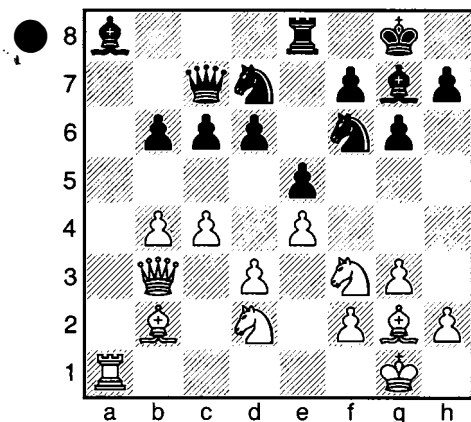
$$1. = 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

The outcome of the game was decided within a few moves.

17.dxe4 dxe4 18.♘g5 ♖fd8 19.♖ad1 ♘f8 20.♖xd8 ♖xd8 21.♖d1 h6 22.♘h3 ♘g6 23.g3 a6 24.♖xd8+ ♖xd8 25.♘c3 ♘e7 26.♘f2 ♘f5 27.♘fxe4 ♘xe4 28.♘xe4 ♖e7 29.♖d3 and the Swedish player successfully overcome the technical difficulties.

**L.Ljubojevic – A.Karpov**

Amsterdam 1988



Karpov has successfully solved his opening problems. White intends to achieve advantageous changes in the centre by 18.d4. After the vigilant 17...c5 the static evaluation suggests equality, and White's slight initiative is hard to transform into some-

thing real. For example, 18.♖b1 ♘c6 19.♗c3 ♜a8.

17. ... d5?

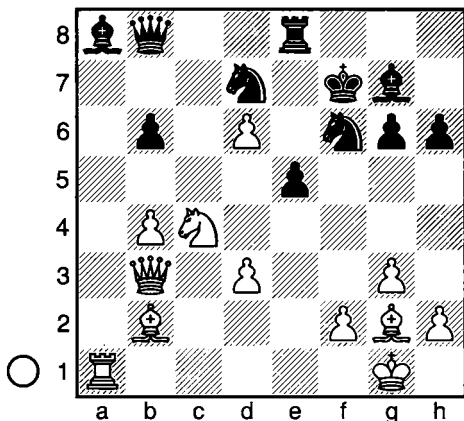
An advance based on a superficial calculation. Black's position does not seem as bad as Hort's in the previous example after 16...e4, but nevertheless it turns out to be hopeless.

The Yugoslav grandmaster skilfully combines threats on the a2-f7 and h1-a8 diagonals. This soon forces the former world champion to give up a bishop and leads to inevitable disaster.

18. cxd5 cxd5

19. ♖g5 ♜d6

After 19...h6 20.♗xf7 ♖xf7 21.exd5 ♜d6 22.♗c4 ♜b8 23.d6 (D) Black has no adequate defence.



20. exd5 ♘xd5

21. ♗c4 ♜c6

Black's position would have been unsatisfactory in these two critical variations:

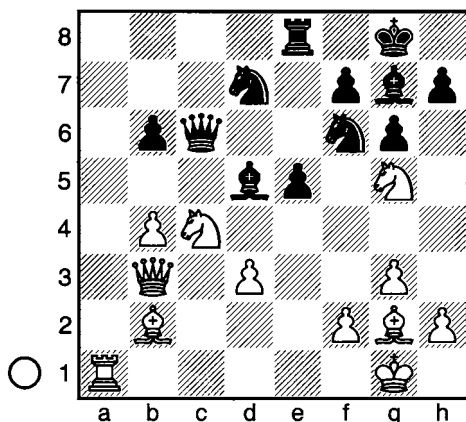
A) 21...♜f8 22.♘xd5 ♗xd5 23.♗xf7 ♜xb4 (23...♗xf7 24.♗e3; 23...♜xf7 24.♗d6) 24.♜xb4 ♗xb4 25.♜a7 ♗c5 26.♗cd6 ♜b8 27.♗xe5 ♘xe5 28.♘xe5;

B) 21...♜e7:

B1) 22.♘xd5?! ♗xd5 23.♜a7 (23.♗xf7 ♗xf7 24.♗e3 ♗f6 25.♗xd5 ♜e6) 23...♜d8 (23...♜xg5 24.♜xd7+-) 24.♗a3 ♗xb4 (24...♗f6) 25.♗xf7 ♜xf7 26.♜xb4 ♜d5 27.♗c4 ♜xd3 28.♗xb6 ♗xb6

29.♜xg7+ ♗xg7 30.♜e7+ ♗g8 31.♜e6+ with a draw;

B2) 22.♜a7! ♜d8 23.b5 ♘xg2 24.♘a3 ♗c5 25.♜xe7 ♗xb3 26.♗xg2.



22. ♗e3!

A strong tactical blow. White forces the transition into a favourable ending. Despite his usual obstinacy, Karpov is unable to set up a defence.

22. ... ♘xb3

23. ♘xc6 h6

Things would have remained difficult for Black after 23...♜c8 24.♘b5 h6 25.♜a3 ♘c2 26.♗e4.

24. ♜a3 hxg5

25. ♜xb3

Now White has the two bishops with a favourable pawn structure.

25...♘f8 26.♗g2 ♘e6 27.♘b5 ♗g7 28.h3 ♘e7 29.♘c3 ♘d6 30.♜a3 ♘b8 31.♜a8 ♜e7 32.♘d2! e4 33.d4 ♘c7 34.♜c8 ♗f8 35.♘c3 ♗h7 36.♘c6 ♗f8 37.b5 1-0

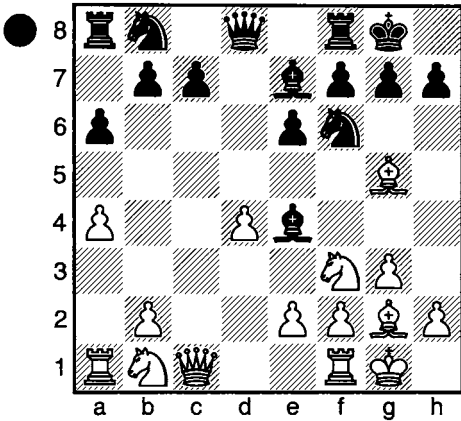
### I.Dorfman – A.Onischuk

Cap d'Agde 2000

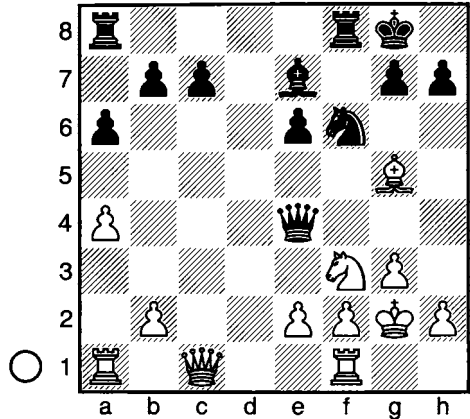
- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | d4  | ♗f6 |
| 2. | c4  | e6  |
| 3. | g3  | d5  |
| 4. | ♗f3 | ♘e7 |
| 5. | ♘g2 | 0-0 |
| 6. | 0-0 | dx4 |

- 7. ♖c2 a6
- 8. a4 ♕d7
- 9. ♖xc4 ♕c6
- 10. ♕g5 ♕d5
- 11. ♖c2 ♕e4
- 12. ♖c1

In this theoretical position White has tried 10. ♕f4 and 10. ♖d1.



White's favourable rook + bishop tandem enables him to attack the opponent's numerous pawn weaknesses without particular difficulty. He converted his advantage on the 79<sup>th</sup> move.



Position after 17... ♖e4

A critical moment. White is threatening to seize control of the centre after 13. ♖c3.

- 12. ... ♖c6?

An unfortunate way of handling the position. Black should have chosen between 12...h6 13. ♕xf6 ♕xf6 14. ♖c3 ♕xf3 15. ♕xf3 c6 with approximate equality and 12...♖bd7 13. ♖c3 ♕c6 14. ♖c2 b5.

- 13. ♖bd2 ♖xd4

This clearly unfavourable operation is forced on account of the simple variation 13... ♕d5 14. ♕xf6 ♕xf6 15. e4.

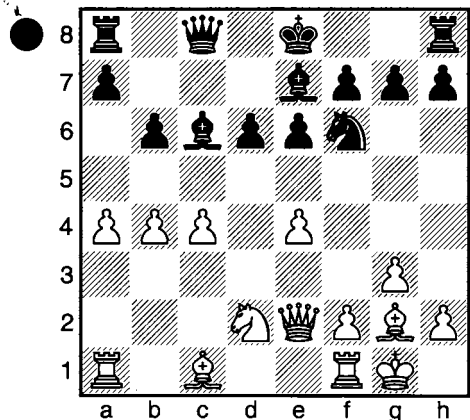
- 14. ♖xd4 ♕xg2
- 15. ♖xe6 fxe6
- 16. ♖xg2 ♖d5+
- 17. ♖f3 ♖e4 (D)

The end of a series of forced moves. White takes play into a favourable ending.

- 18. ♖e3 ♖xe3 19. ♕xe3 ♖d5 20. ♕d2 ♖fd8
- 21. ♖fc1 c6 22. ♖c4 ♕f6 23. e4 ♖c7 24. ♕f4
- ♖e8 25. ♖b4 b5 26. axb5 axb5 27. ♖c1 ♖a6
- 28. ♖b3 h6 29. h4 ♖f7 30. g4 ♖a4 31. g5
- hxg5 32. ♖xg5+ ♕xg5 33. ♕xg5 ♖c8 34. f3

**I. Dorfman – A. Hauchard**

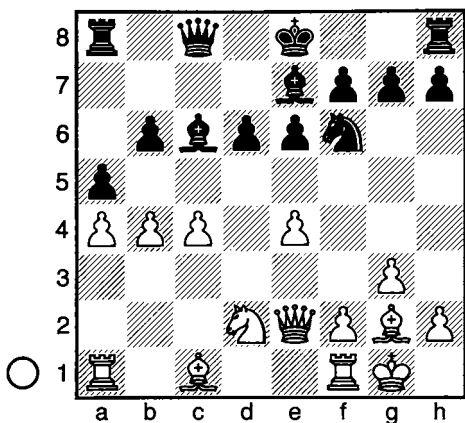
French Championship, Meribel 1998



With his last move 13. ♖e2 White prepared the advance of his a-pawn. Now if 13...0-0 there follows 14. a5 bxa5 15. b5 ♕b7 16. ♖b3 a6 17. ♖xa5 (here 17. b6 is simple and good) 17...axb5 18. cxb5 d5 19. ♕g5

♖c3 20.♜fc1 ♕e5 21.♙f4 ♖d4 22.♜e3  
with a winning position for White.

13. ... a5



Black undermines the b4 pawn, in order to gain control of the c5 square. If he succeeds in this, it will signify the failure of White's strategy.

In search of **dynamic play** I managed to hit on a rather unusual idea.

14. c5

This pawn sacrifice clarifies the situation. The tactical complications arising after 14...axb4 are favourable to White: 15.cxd6 ♙xd6 16.e5 ♙xg2 17.♜xg2 ♜c3 18.♘c4 ♜xa1 19.♘xd6+ ♜f8 20.♙b2.

And in the event of 14...dxc5 15.b5 ♙b7 16.♘c4 ♘d7 17.♜d1 0-0 18.♜xd7 (18.♙f4) 18...♜xd7 19.♘xb6 ♜d4 20.♙b2 ♜b4 21.♜c2 c4 22.♙a3 Black loses material.

14. ... bxc5  
15. b5 ♙b7  
16. ♘c4 ♜c7  
17. ♙d2 0-0  
18. ♙xa5

Naturally, 18...♜xa5 loses to 19.b6, but now the connected passed pawns decide the outcome.

18. ... ♜b8  
19. ♙c3 d5

This advance accelerates the inevitable end, but after 19...♜e8 20.a5 d5 21.♙e5 ♜d8

22.♜fd1 the threat of 23.a6 cannot be parried.

20. exd5 ♙xd5  
21. ♙xd5 ♘xd5  
22. ♙e5 ♜b7  
23. ♜g4 ♙f6  
24. ♜f3 ♙xe5

White's strategy is to simplify the position, so as then to activate his passed pawns.

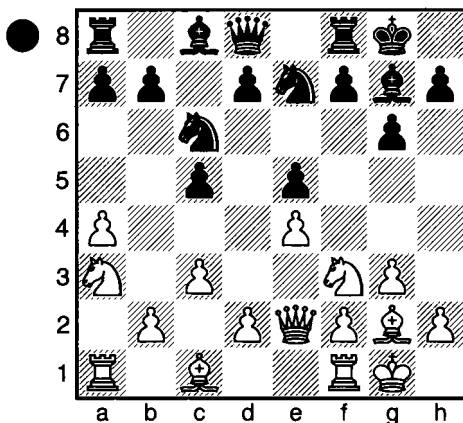
25. ♘xe5 ♜fc8  
26. ♜fc1 ♜c7  
27. ♘c4 ♘b6  
28. ♘xb6 ♜xb6  
29. ♜c4

After exchanging two pairs of minor pieces White prevents the counterplay with c5-c4 and at the same time fights for the d-file.

29...h6 30.♜d1 ♜a7 31.♜d3 ♜b8 32.♜d1 ♜e5 33.b6 ♜b7 34.a5 ♜h7 35.♙g2 ♜a8 36.♜c2 g6 37.♜xc5 ♜e4+ 38.f3 ♜e1 39.♜d2 ♜a1 40.h4 h5 41.♜c3 1-0

**F.Schmit – Y.Benitah**

French Junior Championship 1996



In this, a critical position for the opening, Black has secure control of the centre. Now he has to decide on his subsequent plan. From the result of the static evaluation he has no reason to hurry:

1. ♣ 2. = 3. = 4. ♣

The white king may come under attack after f7-f5.

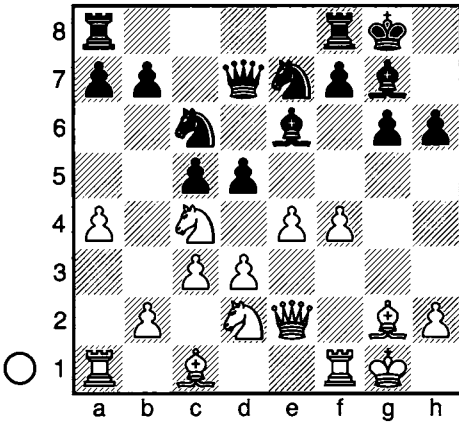


9. ... d5?

This dynamic move squanders practically all Black's advantage. After all, with the centre open there is no prospect of an attack on the kingside. From now on White gains counterplay against the e5 pawn. This example clearly illustrates the effectiveness of the method advocated by me.

**Candidate moves should be in accordance with the demands of the static evaluation!**

Thus in the possible continuation 9...d6! 10.♘c4 h6 11.d3 ♖e6 12.♘fd2 (12.♘h4 g5 13.♘f3 f5) 12...♚d7 (12...f5 13.exf5 gxf5 14.f4 ♚d7 15.♘f3 ♘g6) 13.f4 exf4 14.gxf4 d5 (diagram) the fragile position of the white king should decide the outcome.



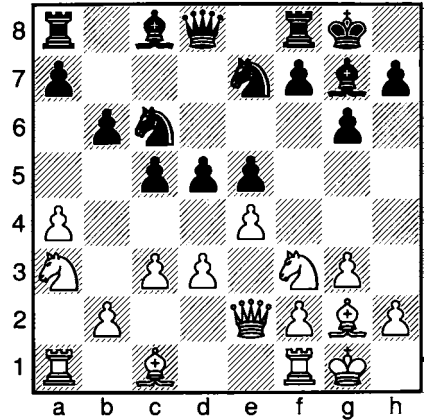
10. d3 b6 (D)

The advance of the central pawn would have merely caused Black problems: 10...d4 11.cxd4 cxd4 (11...exd4 12.♖f4) 12.♖d2 ♘a5 13.♖xa5 ♚xa5 14.♘c4 ♚c7 15.♗fc1 ♚b8 16.b4 ♜6 17.♚b2 (17.b5 ♖h6! 18.♗c2 ♖e6) 17...♖e6 18.b5 ♗c8 19.h4.

11. ♗b1?

A loss of time. It was essential to play dynamically: 11.exd5 ♘xd5 12.♘c4 f6 (if 12...♗e8 13.♘g5 f6 14.♚f3 ♘de7 15.♘e4 ♗f8 16.a5 f5 17.♘ed6 and White seizes the initiative) 13.♘fd2 ♗e8 (13...f5 14.♘f3 ♗e8 is comparatively better) 14.f4.

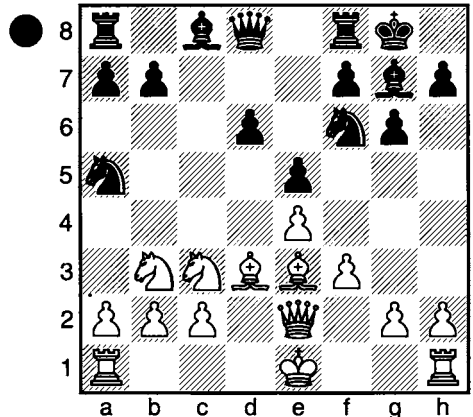
11. ... ♖a6 and 0-1 26 moves later.



Position after 10...b6

V.Anand – G.Kamsky  
Buenos Aires 1994

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | e4   | c5   |
| 2.  | ♘f3  | d6   |
| 3.  | d4   | cxd4 |
| 4.  | ♘xd4 | ♘f6  |
| 5.  | ♘c3  | g6   |
| 6.  | ♖e3  | ♖g7  |
| 7.  | f3   | 0-0  |
| 8.  | ♖c4  | ♘c6  |
| 9.  | ♚e2  | ♘a5  |
| 10. | ♖d3  | e5   |
| 11. | ♘b3  |      |



11. ... d5

Black gets rid of his backward pawn and consolidates his advantage in the centre. White's only hopes are associated with his slight lead in development.

The game **Frolov-Alterman, USSR 1990**, continued 11...♙e6 12.0-0 ♖c8 13.♘xa5 ♜xa5 14.♘b5 d5 15.♘xa7 ♜cd8 16.♘b5 ♞d7 17.♚e1, and Black failed to solve his opening problems.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 12. | exd5 | ♘xd5 |
| 13. | ♘xd5 | ♚xd5 |
| 14. | 0-0  | ♘c6  |
| 15. | ♞fd1 | ♚e6  |
| 16. | c3   | b6   |
| 17. | ♞d2  | ♚e7  |
| 18. | ♙e4  | ♙b7  |
| 19. | ♚b5  | ♞ac8 |
| 20. | ♞ad1 | ♞fd8 |

- |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|
| 22. | ... | ♙f6 |
| 23. | ♙d5 | ♚g7 |
| 24. | ♚e4 | ♞c7 |
| 25. | ♞e2 | ♘d8 |
| 26. | ♞d2 | ♘c6 |
| 27. | ♞e2 | ♘d8 |
| 28. | ♞d2 | ♘c6 |

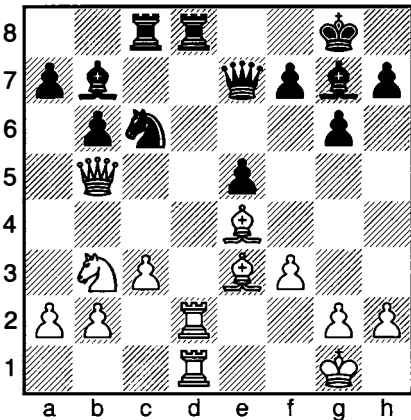
Now after 28...h5 29.♙xb7 ♘xb7 30.♚d5 ♙g5 31.♙xg5 ♚xg5 32.♞e2 f6 I would prefer Black's position.

½-½

It is with great pleasure that I turn to the following game, which gives a classic approach to the problem of the centre.

**V.Anand – L.Van Wely**

Wijk aan Zee 1999



The static evaluation is advantageous to Black:

1. ♞ 2. = 3. ± 4. ±

It follows that **White must seek dynamic resources**. I can suggest 21.a4 with the aim of weakening Black's queenside. The Indian player marks time and allows his opponent to consolidate the situation.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 21. | ♚a4  | ♞xd2 |
| 22. | ♞xd2 |      |

Perhaps 22.♘xd2 f5 23.♙d5+ ♚h8 24.♘c4 ♚c7 25.♞d2 should have been considered.

- |     |      |        |
|-----|------|--------|
| 1.  | e4   | c5     |
| 2.  | ♘c3  | ♘c6    |
| 3.  | ♘f3  | g6     |
| 4.  | d4   | cxd4   |
| 5.  | ♘xd4 | ♙g7    |
| 6.  | ♙e3  | ♘f6    |
| 7.  | ♙c4  | ♚a5    |
| 8.  | 0-0  | 0-0    |
| 9.  | ♘b3  | ♚c7    |
| 10. | ♙g5  | a6     |
| 11. | ♙e2  | e6 (D) |

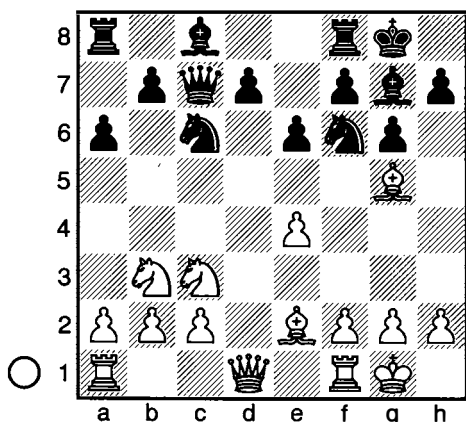
Caught unawares, the Dutch player has reacted unsuccessfully and he is now forced to direct his play along dynamic lines. He takes control of the outpost at d5, but leaves his d-pawn backward.

His decision is understandable, since it is better to go fishing in troubled waters than to suffer after 11...b5 12.a4 bxa4 (12...b4 13.♘d5 ♚e5 14.f4 ♚xb2 15.♘b6 ♞b8 16.♘c4 ♚c3 17.♞f3 or 14...♚xe4 15.♙f3 loses material) 13.♞xa4.

12. ♚d2!

Static play, enabling White to retain all the trumps of his position. At the same time, the inappropriate 12.a4 would have allowed Black to gain adequate counterplay by 12...d5 13.♙xf6 ♙xf6 14.exd5 ♙xc3

15. bxc3 (15. d6 ♖b8 16. bxc3 ♜d8) 15... ♜d8  
16. c4 ♘e7.

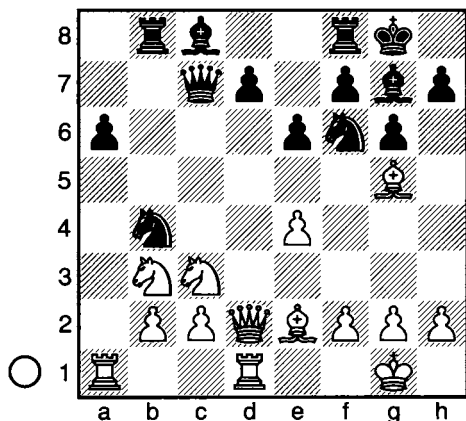


Position after 11...e6

12. ... b5

The following variation illustrates the subtlety of Anand's plan: 12...d5 13. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 14. exd5 ♖xc3 15. ♜xc3.

13. a3 ♜b8  
14. ♜fd1 b4  
15. axb4 ♘xb4



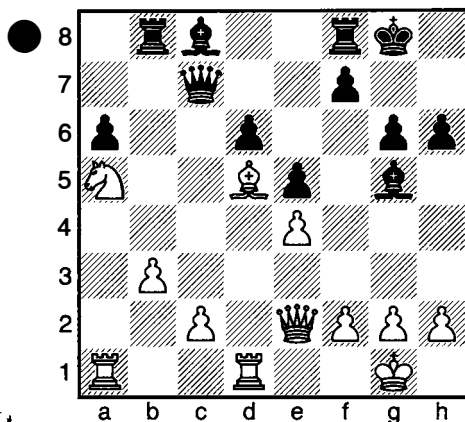
At the end of a series of forced moves the battle reaches a critical point. Black renews the threat of d7-d5. And again White takes prophylactic measures.

16. ♖f4! e5

17. ♖g5 d6

The critical line was to provoke complications by 17...h6. Even so, White would have retained his superiority after 18. ♖xh6 ♖xh6 19. ♜xh6 ♘xc2 20. ♜ac1 ♜xb3 21. ♜xc2, when the black queen is unable to remain on the c-file, preventing ♖c4.

18. ♘a5 ♖e6  
19. b3 h6  
20. ♖xf6 ♖xf6  
21. ♖c4 ♖g5  
22. ♜e2 ♖c8  
23. ♘d5 ♘xd5  
24. ♖xd5



The Indian grandmaster has created a construction made out of concrete. Subsequently, continuing in artistic style, he strengthens it to the maximum. For a player of such class this is already a technical position.

24. ... ♜b5  
25. ♘c4 ♖g7  
26. ♘b2 f5  
27. ♖c4 ♜c5  
28. ♘a4 ♜c6  
29. ♘c3 ♜a7  
30. ♖h1 ♖h4  
31. f3 ♜f2  
32. ♜d3

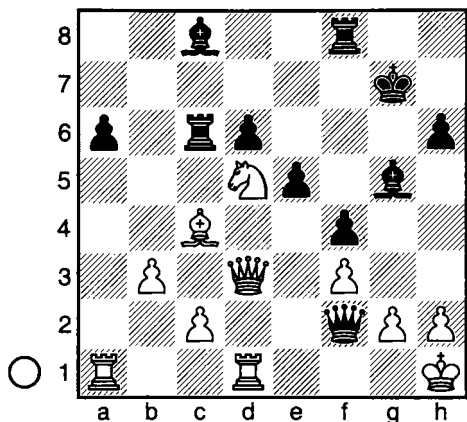
32. ♜xf2 ♖xf2 33. ♘d5 fxe4 34. fxe4 would also have maintained the advantage.

32. ... ♖g5

33.  $\text{exf5}$   $\text{gxf5}$

After 33...  $\text{exf5}$  34.  $\text{e4}$  White would have established a blocking knight.

34.  $\text{d5}$   $\text{f4}$



35.  $\text{d2?}$

Here Anand missed 35.  $\text{d4}$   $\text{b6}$   $\text{c3}$   $\text{c5}$  37.  $\text{d5}$   $\text{c6}$  38.  $\text{a5}$   $\text{f2}$  39.  $\text{d4}$ , retaining an obvious advantage. However, this did not prevent him from winning the game 25 moves later.

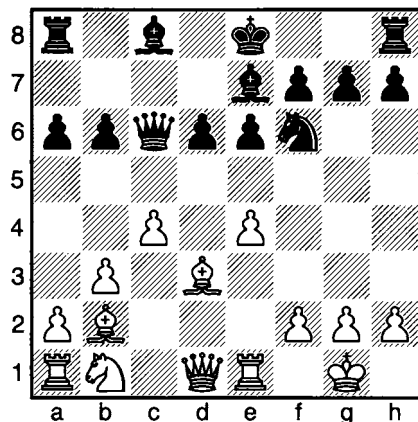
The following example is significantly more complicated, although it resembles the same theme.

### I. Dorfman – L. Comas Fabrego Andorra (Zonal Tournament) 1998

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. $\text{e4}$   | $\text{c5}$     |
| 2. $\text{f3}$   | $\text{e6}$     |
| 3. $\text{d4}$   | $\text{cxd4}$   |
| 4. $\text{fxd4}$ | $\text{a6}$     |
| 5. $\text{d3}$   | $\text{c7}$     |
| 6. $\text{0-0}$  | $\text{f6}$     |
| 7. $\text{e1}$   | $\text{d6}$     |
| 8. $\text{b3}$   | $\text{e7}$     |
| 9. $\text{c4}$   | $\text{c6}$     |
| 10. $\text{xc6}$ | $\text{xc6}$    |
| 11. $\text{b2}$  | $\text{b6 (D)}$ |

From a fashionable line of the Paulsen Variation a typical 'hedgehog' formation has arisen. White's usual plan in such

situations is to prevent the freeing breaks  $\text{b6-b5}$  and  $\text{d6-d5}$  by  $\text{a2-a4}$ ,  $\text{c3}$  and  $\text{a3-b4}$  followed by pressure on the weakness at  $\text{d6}$ .

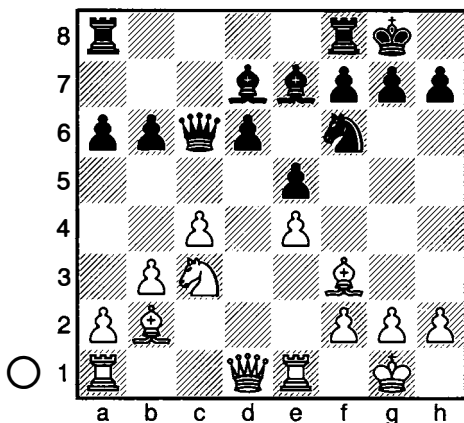


12.  $\text{e2}$   $\text{0-0}$

The capture 12...  $\text{dxe4}$  is completely bad. I can suggest 13.  $\text{f3}$   $\text{d5}$  14.  $\text{cxd5}$   $\text{exd5}$  15.  $\text{c3}$   $\text{xc3}$  16.  $\text{xc3}$   $\text{xc3}$  17.  $\text{xd3}$   $\text{b8}$  18.  $\text{d6}$  and White wins.

13.  $\text{f3}$   $\text{e5}$   
14.  $\text{c3}$   $\text{d7}$

Black accepts his fate. This natural bishop manoeuvre allows the opponent to deploy his army ideally, but even after the comparatively better 14...  $\text{b8}$  15.  $\text{a4}$   $\text{a8}$  16.  $\text{d3}$   $\text{b7}$  he would have ended up in an inferior situation.



- 15. ♖e2 ♜b7
- 16. a4 ♞fd8
- 17. ♖d3 ♖f8
- 18. ♖c1

The white bishop switches to a favourable post at e3, to fortify the g1-a7 diagonal. In the light of this, the interposition of Black's next move is perplexing.

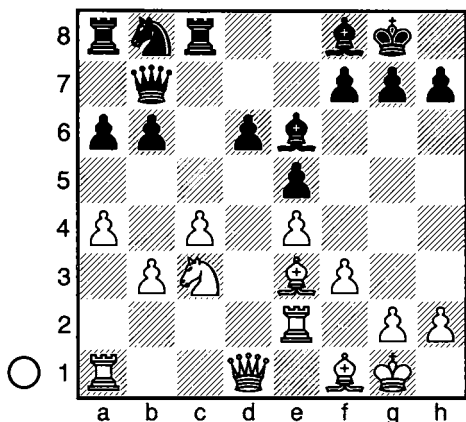
- 18. ... ♖g4
- 19. f3 ♖e6
- 20. ♖e3 ♞dc8
- 21. ♖f1 ♘d7
- 22. ♞e2 ♘b8

- 26. ♞c2 ♞xc2
- 27. ♜xc2 ♞c8
- 28. ♜d2 h6
- 29. ♞c1 ♞xc1
- 30. ♜xc1 ♘b8
- 31. g3

The logical continuation of the play on the queenside.

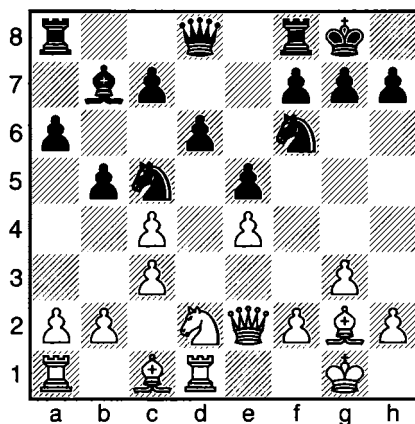
- 31. ... ♖d8
- 32. ♖h3 ♜c7
- 33. ♜xc7 ♖xc7
- 34. f4 ♖f8
- 35. fxe5 dxe5

1-0 on the 50th move.



I.Dorfman – Ma.Tseitlin

Leningrad 1975



A critical position has been reached, since White has to decide whether it is advantageous for him to exchange knight for bishop. He is already totally dominant, but the manoeuvre of the enemy knight to b4 may cause some technical problems.

- 23. ♘d5 ♖xd5
- 24. cxd5

As a result of the exchange of minor pieces the static evaluation remains unchanged, but in place of the weak d5 square and the backward d6 pawn there is now the bishop pair, a complex of weak light squares, and a favourable ending for White.

- 24. ... ♘d7
- 25. b4 ♖e7

The diagram position was reached from an English Opening after the moves

- 1.c4 e5 2.♘c3 ♘f6 3.g3 ♖b4 4.♖g2 0-0
- 5.e4 ♖xc3 6.dxc3 d6 7.♜e2 ♘bd7 8.♘f3
- a6 9.0-0 b5 10.♘d2 ♘c5 11.♞d1 ♖b7

Black's play is based on the tactic 12.cxb5 axb5 13.♜xb5 ♖a6 14.♜c6 (14.♜b4 ♖e2 15.♞e1 ♘d3) 14...♖e2 15.♞e1 ♞a6. If White does not take the pawn on the 13th move, he has serious problems with his development. Black can exploit the geo-

metric idea ♖a4 and ♜a8 to intensify the pressure on the light squares.

12. ♘b3!

White's tactical play is based on various interpretations of the pin:

12... ♘fxe4 13. ♘a5;

12... ♘cxe4 13. ♘a5 ♜b8 14. ♘xb7 ♜xb7

15. ♙g5 d5 16. ♙xf6 ♘xf6 17. cxd5;

12... ♙xe4 13. ♘xc5.

Unfortunately, there remains

12. ... ♘xb3

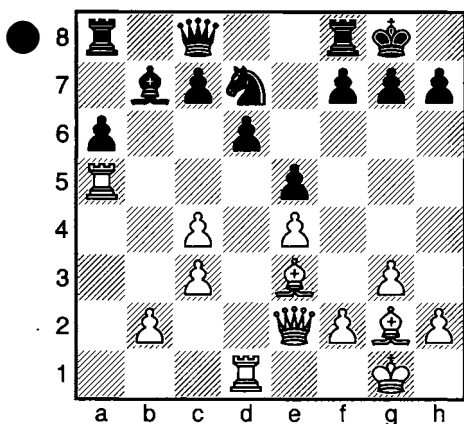
But this exchange signifies the failure of Black's entire strategy. It becomes possible for the pawn structure to evolve and from now on the white bishops dominate the board.

13. axb3 ♘d7

14. ♙e3 bxc4

15. bxc4 ♜c8

16. ♖a5



This natural rook manoeuvre prepares the destructive breakthrough c4-c5. It follows logically from the material situation on the board: Black does not have his dark-square bishop.

Here the desperate attempt at a belated counterattack merely hastens the inevitable end.

16. ... f5

17. exf5 ♙xg2

18. ♙xg2

♙xf5

19. c5

dx c5

20. ♜c4+

♙f7

21. ♙g1

The king retreat emphasises the static nature of White's advantage. After all, the enemy monarch's defences have been broken up and his pawns are in ruins. The outcome of the game is decided and Black capitulated on the 43rd move.

## V. Salov – A. Karpov

Buenos Aires 1994

1. e4 c5

2. ♘f3 e6

3. d4 cxd4

4. ♘xd4 ♘c6

5. ♘c3 ♜c7

6. ♙e2 ♘f6

7. ♙e3 a6

8. 0-0 ♙b4

9. ♘a4 ♙e7

10. ♘xc6 bxc6

11. ♘b6 ♜b8

12. ♘xc8 ♜xc8

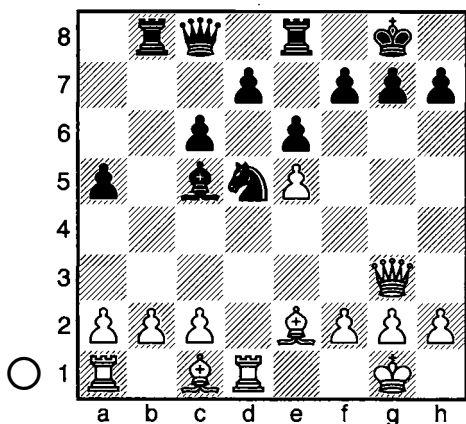
13. e5 ♘d5

14. ♙c1 ♙c5

15. ♜d3 0-0

16. ♜g3 ♜e8

17. ♜d1 a5



A critical position of this opening. White has the bishop pair and, as usual, everything is decided by the pawn structure.

18. b3

Now Black is able to achieve his desires. Perhaps White should have opted in favour of 18.a3 a4 (18...♖h8 19.b3!) 19.b4 axb3 20.cxb3 ♕f8 21.b4 c5 22.b5 c4 23.a4 with the more favourable prospects.

18. ... a4

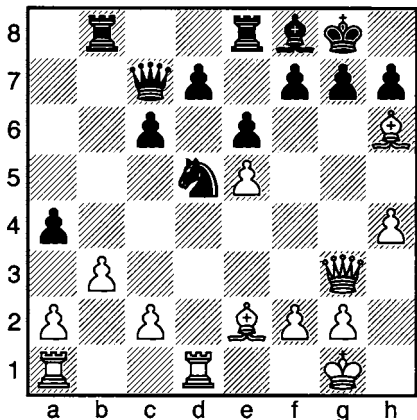
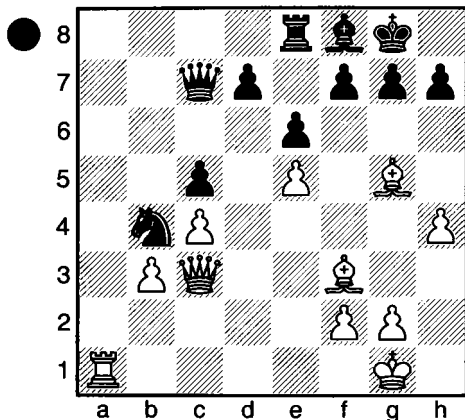
19. ♕h6

After 19.a3 axb3 20.cxb3 it would have all reduced to the variation given in the previous note.

19. ... ♕f8

20. h4 ♖c7

- 22. axb3 ♖a8
- 23. c4 ♜b4
- 24. ♖c3 c5
- 25. ♕f3 ♖xa1
- 26. ♖xa1



21. ♕g5

Interesting complications, although not obligatory for Black, could have resulted from 21.h5 f6 22.♕xg7 ♕xg7 23.h6 ♖e7 24.c4 ♜b4 (24...♖xe5 25.♖xe5 fxe5 26.cxd5 ♕xh6 27.dxc6 dxc6 28.bxa4 ♖a8 29.♖d6 ♖xa4 30.♖xc6) 25.bxa4 ♖xe5 26.♖xe5 fxe5 27.hxg7 ♖a8 28.♖d6 ♖xa4 29.a3 ♜c2 30.♖a2 ♜d4 31.♖f1 ♖xg7. White faces a difficult battle to save the game.

21. ... axb3

26. ... d6

Karpov considers the position to be equal and he plays for simplification. Since in the game White did not take on d6, 26...d5!? deserved serious consideration: 27.exd6 ♕xd6 28.♖d2 ♕h2+ 29.♖h1 ♕e5.

- 27. ♕f4 ♖d8
- 28. h5 h6
- 29. ♖d1 dxe5
- 30. ♖xd8 ♖xd8
- 31. ♕xe5 ♖d7
- 32. g3 ♜d3
- 33. ♕c6

After 33.♕e2 ♜xe5 34.♖xe5 a draw could have been agreed.

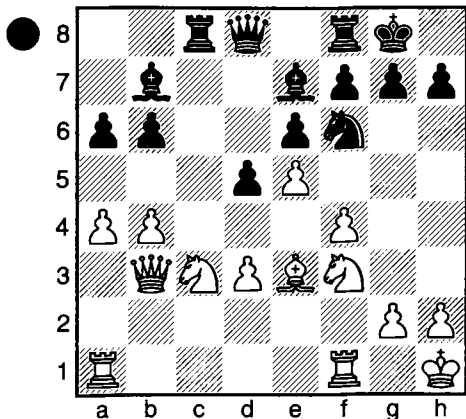
- 33. ... ♖d8
- 34. ♖d2 ♕e7
- 35. ♕c3 ♕g5
- 36. ♖d1 ♜c1
- 37. ♖c2 ♖d3

The position is equal. Subsequently the game lost its logical pattern.

I should like to continue with an example from the play of the unforgettable Leonid Stein.

## G.Sigurjonsson – L.Stein

Rekyjavik 1972



With his next move White will fix the pawn structure. For this it is sufficient for him to place one of his minor pieces on d4, to significantly reduce the scope of the light-square bishop. His plan will then be to exploit the weak dark squares in his opponent's position after an eventual a4-a5.

16. ... d4!

A timely breakthrough. Black regains his pawn by force and now he will have the bishop pair with a pawn structure that is able to evolve.

17. ♖xd4 ♗g4

18. ♙g1 ♖xh2

19. ♜fc1

A bitter necessity, since 19.♙xh2 ♜xc3 20.♜xc3 ♙xb4 is unacceptable for White.

19. ... ♗g4

20. ♖e4 ♙xb4

21. ♖g5 ♜d5

22. ♖e4 ♜xb3

Here the curtain could have been lowered, but the Icelandic player, competing on his home ground, did not want to resign so early. He prolonged his resistance for a further 15 moves.

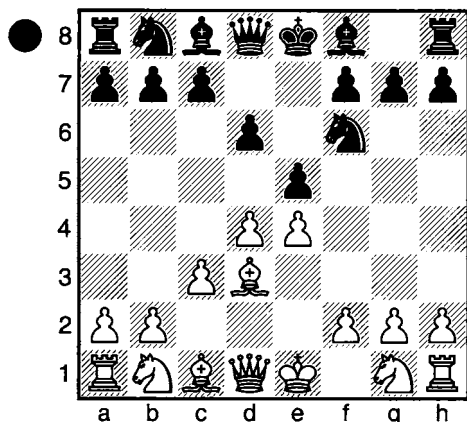
23. ♖xb3 ♙xe4 24. dxe4 b5 25. axb5 axb5 26. g3 h5 27. ♗g2 ♙c3 28. ♜ab1 ♜fd8 29. ♜c2 ♜c4 30. ♗f3 ♙xe5 31. ♜xc4 bxc4 32. ♖a5 ♜d3+ 33. ♗g2 ♜d2+ 34. ♗f3 ♙d4

35. ♙xd4 ♜d3+ 36. ♗g2 ♜xd4 37. e5 ♜d2+ 0-1

## I.Smirin – I.Dorfman

Tilburg 1993

1. e4 d6  
2. d4 ♖f6  
3. ♙d3 e5  
4. c3



At an early stage of the game a critical position has been reached. Already on the fourth move the static evaluation is favourable to White:

1. = 2. = 3. = 4. ±

Black must act dynamically, to induce favourable changes in the centre.

4. ... d5!?

5. dxe5 ♖xe4

The tactical complications arising as a result of the other capture 5...dxe4 6. ♙b5+ ♙d7 7. ♙c4! ♖g4 8. ♙xf7+! ♗xf7 9. e6+ ♗xe6 10. ♜xg4+ ♗f7 11. ♜h5+ g6 12. ♜d5+ ♗g7 13. ♙g5 ♙e7 14. ♙xe7 ♜xe7 15. ♖e2 leave White with somewhat the better chances.

6. ♖f3 ♖c5

Here is another example of successful play by Black: 6...♖c6 7. ♖bd2 ♖c5 8. ♖b3 ♙g4 9. 0-0 ♜d7 10. ♜e1 0-0-0 11. ♖xc5 ♙xc5 12. b4 ♙b6 13. a4 a5 14. b5 ♖e7 15. ♙e3

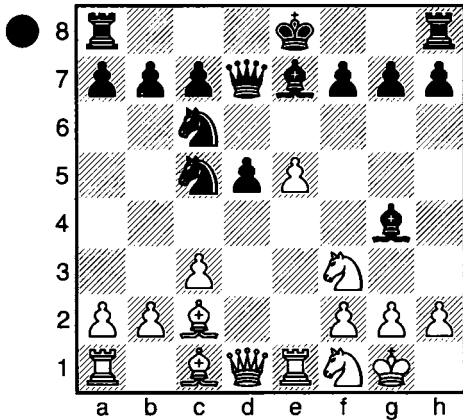


♙xe3 16.♞xe3 ♖b8 17.♚e1 ♙xf3 18.♞xf3  
 ♜g6, Yusupov-Adams, Hastings 1989.

7. ♙c2 ♙g4  
 8. 0-0

White must watch the d5 pawn closely, since it may transform into a fireball, cutting White's position in two after 8.♞bd2 ♜c6 9.0-0 d4 10.h3 ♙h5 11.♞b3 (White decided to force the exchange on c3 and play a very difficult endgame) 11...dxc3 12.bxc3 ♚xd1 13.♞xd1 ♙g6 14.♙xg6 hxg6 15.♞fd4 ♜xd4 16.cxd4 ♜a4 17.♙e3 ♜c3 18.♞d3 ♜d5, as in the game Tratar-Chandler, Yugoslavia 1992.

8. ... ♙e7  
 9. ♞e1 ♜c6  
 10. ♞bd2 ♚d7  
 11. ♜f1



White plays his second knight to g3, to have the possibility of progressing with h2-h3 followed by ♜d4.

**To maintain the static evaluation it is absolutely essential for Black to parry this threat.**

11. ... d4!  
 12. b4

Forced, since after 12.cxd4 ♙xf3 13.gxf3 ♜xd4 Black gains the initiative.

12. ... ♜e6

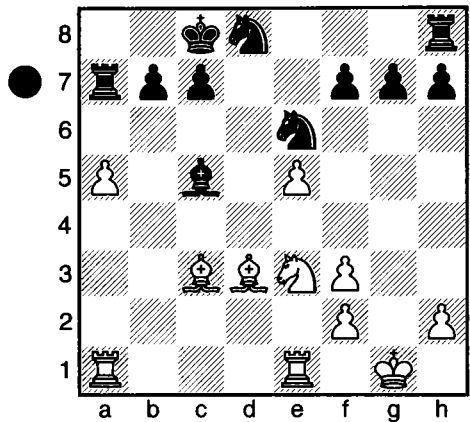
The pseudo-aggressive 12...d3? 13.♙b1 would have lost a pawn.

13. b5 ♜cd8

14. ♙b2 dxc3

The transition into an ending was planned before the 11th move, since after 14...c5 15.cxd4 cxd4 16.a4 0-0 17.h3 White would have a favourable pawn structure.

15. ♚xd7+ ♙xd7  
 16. ♙xc3 ♙xf3  
 17. gxh3 a6  
 18. bxa6 ♞xa6  
 19. ♜e3 ♙c5  
 20. a4 ♙c8  
 21. ♙d3 ♞a7  
 22. a5



22. ... ♙d4!

It is customarily thought that one of the advantages of a bishop pair is that one of them can always be exchanged. Here, however, we have precisely the opposite case. The exchange is aimed at weakening the squares a5, d4 and f4 in White's position. Black gained sufficient counterplay.

**D.Anic – I.Dorfman**

French Championship, Meribel 1998

1. ♜f3 d5  
 2. g3 g6  
 3. ♙g2 ♙g7  
 4. d4 c6  
 5. ♞bd2 ♜f6  
 6. 0-0 0-0

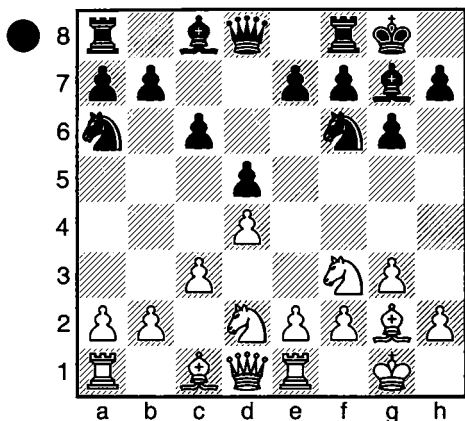
## 7. c3

White more often aims for c2-c4 followed by b2-b3 and ♔b2. Here, however, he sets his sights on the e-pawn, in order after the central advance e2-e4 to obtain an outpost on e5. The development of events shows that the best way of ensuring this advance is by 1 e4!.

7. ... ♖a6

8. ♖e1

8.b4 ♖c7 9.a4 a5 10.♔a3 was probably more to the point.



8. ... c5

Black has created a favourable tension in the centre.

9. dxc5

The first concessions. After 9.e4 dxe4 10.♖xe4 ♖xe4 11.♗xe4 cxd4 12.cxd4 (12.♖xd4 e5) 12...♖c7 White would have adapted to a new situation.

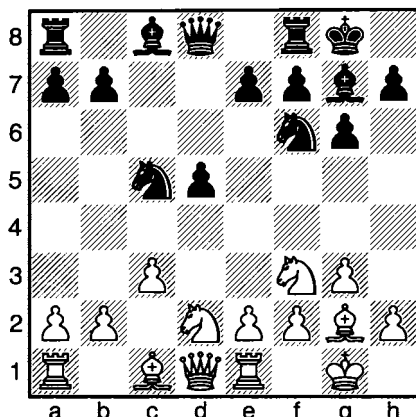
9. ... ♖xc5 (D)

The static evaluation has become negative for White. It is this that explains his dynamic attempts to provoke exchanges.

10. ♖b3 ♖ce4

11. ♖g5

The other way of offering an exchange 11.♖bd2? would have turned out catastrophically after 11...♖xf2 12.♗xf2 ♖g4+ 13.♗g1 ♗b6+ 14.e3 ♖xe3 15.♗xe3 ♗xe3+ 16.♗h1 ♗b6 17.♖b3 ♔f5.



Position after 9... ♖xc5

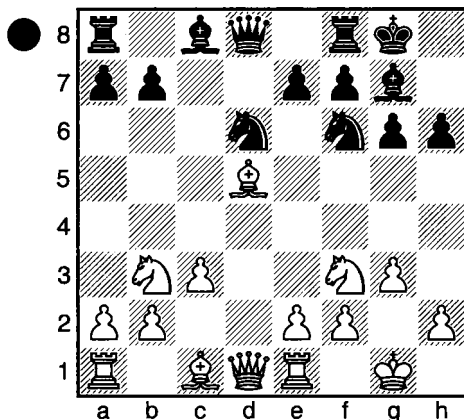
11. ... ♖d6

12. ♔xd5

White is obliged to accept the challenge, as otherwise he will have no compensation for the defects of his pawn structure.

12. ... h6

13. ♖f3



13. ... a5

The centralised white bishop is in a delicate situation, but primitive play does not produce any particular dividends: 13...e6 14.e4 exd5 (14...♖dx4 15.♔c4) 15.e5 ♖de4 16.exf6 ♖xf6.

14. e4 a4

15. ♖bd4

To me 15.♖c5 ♖a5 seems critical:

A) 16.♙e3 ♘d5 17.exd5 (17.♗xd5 b6) 17...♘c4 18.♙d4 ♘xb2 (18...♗xd5!?) 19.♗e2 ♗xd5 20.♗xb2 ♗xf3 and Black is clearly better;

B) 16.e5 ♘d5 17.♗xd5 ♘f5 18.♗xd8 ♖xd8 19.♘e4 ♙xe5 (19...♖d3 is possibly stronger, with counterplay) 20.g4 ♘d6 21.♙xh6 ♙xg4 22.♘xe5 ♖xe5 23.♘d6 exd6 24.b3 ♖a8 (24...axb3 25.axb3 ♖de8 26.♖e3) 25.♙f4=.

- |         |     |
|---------|-----|
| 15. ... | ♘d5 |
| 16. ♙e5 | ♖a5 |
| 17. ♗e2 | ♖e8 |
| 18. c4  | ♙g4 |
| 19. h3  |     |

A good equalising opportunity. After 19.♗d3 ♖c5 Black would have retained some advantage.

- |          |      |
|----------|------|
| 19. ...  | ♙xf3 |
| 20. ♘xf3 | ♖c5  |
| 21. ♘d2  | ♗c8  |
| 22. ♖b1  | ♘xc4 |

Immediately after the game I suggested 22...b5 23.b4 axb3 24.axb3 bxc4 25.♙a3 ♖xd5 26.bxc4, but it is hard to transform Black's activity into something real.

- |          |      |
|----------|------|
| 23. ♘xc4 | ♖xc4 |
| 24. ♙e3  | ♖b4  |
| 25. h4   | ♗d7  |
| 26. ♗d2  | ♖b5  |
| 27. ♖ed1 |      |

In severe time trouble White begins a series of inaccuracies, which in the end lead him to disaster.

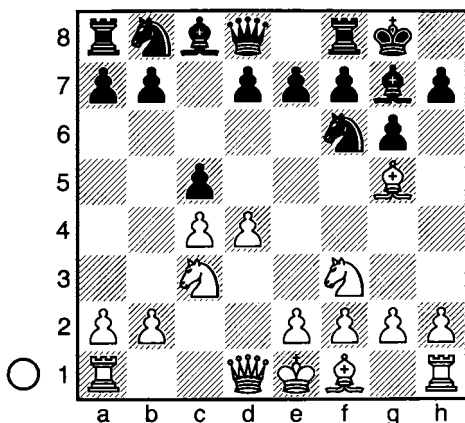
- |         |         |     |        |      |         |
|---------|---------|-----|--------|------|---------|
| 27...h5 | 28.♗c2  | ♖a8 | 29.b4  | ♖xd5 | 30.♖xd5 |
| ♗xd5    | 31.♖d1  | ♗e6 | 32.♗c7 | ♗xa2 | 33.♗xb7 |
| ♖f8     | 34.♗xe7 | ♗b3 | 35.♖d2 | a3   | 36.♗a7  |
| ♗xb4    | 37.♘h2  | ♖e8 | 38.♖d7 | ♗b3  | 39.♖b7  |
| ♗d5     | 40.♗a6  | a2  |        |      | 0-1     |

**N.Giffard – I.Dorfman**

Cannes 1994

- |        |     |
|--------|-----|
| 1. ♘f3 | g6  |
| 2. c4  | ♙g7 |
| 3. d4  | ♘f6 |
| 4. ♘c3 | 0-0 |

**5. ♙g5 c5**



**6. e3?!**

In the very first critical position White chooses an unambitious continuation and allows his opponent free play against the isolated d4 pawn.

In the event of 6.dxc5 ♘a6 Black has a majority of pawns in the centre. **6.d5 was the only move capable of maintaining the static evaluation.** I studied the sharp variations with 6...b5 7.♘xb5 (7.cxb5 a6 8.a4 ♗a5 9.♙d2 axb5 10.♘xb5 ♗b6 11.♙c3 ♙b7 12.d6) 7...♘e4 8.♙c1 ♗a5+ 9.♘d2 ♙a6 10.♘a3 e6 11.f3 ♘d6 12.e4 exd5 13.cxd5 f5, while keeping in reserve 6...d6 7.♘d2 h6 8.♙h4 ♗b6 9.♖b1 g5 10.♙g3 ♘h5 11.e3 ♘xg3 12.hxg3 ♘d7 13.f4 ♘f6.

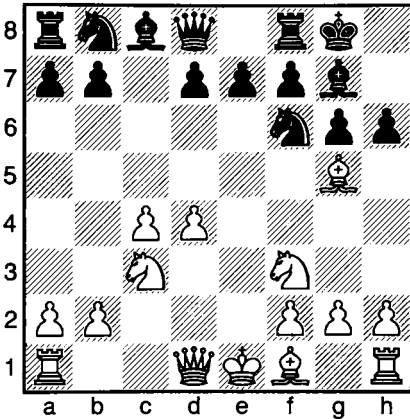
- |         |      |
|---------|------|
| 6. ...  | cxd4 |
| 7. exd4 |      |

If 7.♘d4, then 7...♗a5 followed by 8...♘e4 is strong.

- |          |        |
|----------|--------|
| 7. ...   | h6 (D) |
| 8. ♙e3?! |        |

A fundamentally incorrect decision. White should have looked for a dynamic continuation, since his position is inferior statically. And in concrete terms he should have weakened the position of the enemy king by 8.♙h4 g5 9.♙g3 d5 10.cxd5 ♘xd5 11.♙c4.

- |        |    |
|--------|----|
| 8. ... | d5 |
|--------|----|



Position after 7...h6

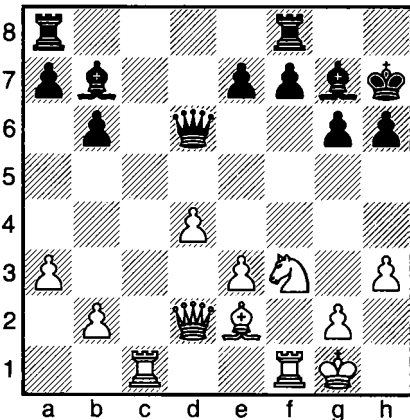
9. ♖c1

After 9.c5 ♘e4 10.♗c2 ♘c6 the weakness of the d4 pawn would have been aggravated by White's backward development.

9. ... ♘c6  
10. h3 b6

An instructive procedure, enabling Black to isolate the central pawn.

11. cxd5 ♘b4  
12. ♗d2 ♘h7  
13. a3 ♘bxd5  
14. ♘xd5 ♘xd5  
15. ♙e2 ♙b7  
16. 0-0 ♘xe3  
17. fxe3 ♗d6



Black consistently increases his advantage and **without any visible mistake** White ends up in a catastrophic position. The static position of his king is irreparably weakened. In addition Black has the two bishops plus a superior pawn structure. Thus the static evaluation is grim for White:

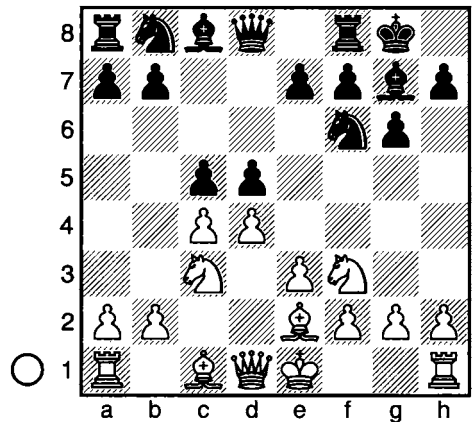
1. ♗ 2. ♗ 3. ♗ 4. ♗

In the following game Black makes use of the same motif to achieve a favourable pawn structure.

**S.Marjanovic – I.Dorfman**

Sarajevo 1988

1. d4 ♘f6  
2. c4 g6  
3. ♘c3 d5  
4. ♘f3 ♙g7  
5. e3 0-0  
6. ♙e2 c5



A critical position. Black is trying to isolate the d4 pawn. The only statically acceptable reply 7.dxc5 allows the opponent to equalise in two lines:

A) 7...♗a5 8.cxd5 ♘xd5 9.♗xd5 ♙xc3+ 10.♙d2 ♗d8 (10...♙xd2+ 11.♗xd2 ♗xc5

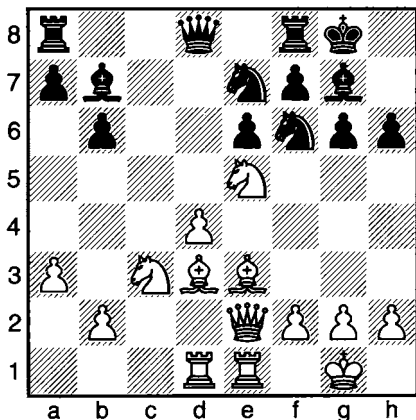
12. ♖c1 ♜b6 13. 0-0 ♘c6) 11. ♙xc3 ♜xc3+  
 12. bxc3 ♝xd5;  
 B) 7... dxc4 8. ♜xd8 ♝xd8 9. ♙xc4 ♘bd7  
 10. c6 bxc6 11. 0-0 ♘b6.

- |    |       |       |
|----|-------|-------|
| 7. | 0-0   | cx d4 |
| 8. | ex d4 | dx c4 |
| 9. | ♙xc4  | b6    |

The Yugoslav grandmaster is one of the greatest experts on the Tarrasch Defence with Black. He is not afraid of playing with an isolated pawn, especially if he has an extra tempo.

Black finds a subtle move order, enabling him to establish a blockading knight in front of the d-pawn. The attempt to advance it now runs into an idea typical of the Grünfeld Defence: 10. d5 ♙a6 11. ♜e2 ♙xc4 12. ♜xc4 ♜c8.

- |     |      |     |
|-----|------|-----|
| 10. | ♝e1  | ♘c6 |
| 11. | ♙g5  | ♘a5 |
| 12. | ♙d3  | ♙b7 |
| 13. | ♜e2  | h6  |
| 14. | ♙f4  | ♘c6 |
| 15. | ♝ad1 | e6  |
| 16. | a3   | ♘h5 |
| 17. | ♙e3  | ♘e7 |
| 18. | ♘e5  | ♘f6 |



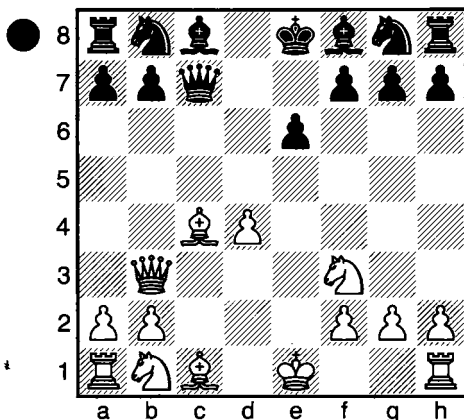
The position has stabilised and it can now be confirmed that White has not managed to exploit the dynamic resources of the position. He faces a difficult defence.

**I. Dorfman – A. Lukin**  
 USSR 1984

- |    |      |       |
|----|------|-------|
| 1. | ♘f3  | d5    |
| 2. | d4   | c5    |
| 3. | c4   | dx c4 |
| 4. | e3   | cx d4 |
| 5. | ♙xc4 |       |

Again, as in the preceding examples, White emerges from the opening with a negative evaluation:

- |    |       |    |   |    |   |    |     |
|----|-------|----|---|----|---|----|-----|
| 1. | =     | 2. | = | 3. | ♜ | 4. | ♜   |
| 5. | ...   |    |   |    |   |    | ♜c7 |
| 6. | ♜b3   |    |   |    |   |    | e6  |
| 7. | ex d4 |    |   |    |   |    |     |



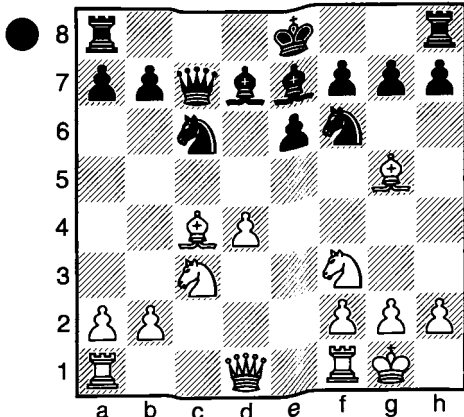
- |     |         |     |
|-----|---------|-----|
| 7.  | ...     | ♘f6 |
| 8.  | ♘c3     | ♘c6 |
| 9.  | 0-0     | ♙d7 |
| 10. | ♜d1     | ♙e7 |
| 10. | ♙g5 (D) |     |

After a series of forced moves a critical position has been reached.

- |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|------|
| 11. | ... | 0-0? |
|-----|-----|------|

This natural move loses practically by force.

It seems to me that the fate of the entire variation depends on the continuation 11... ♘b4 12. ♙b3 ♙c6 (12... 0-0 13. a3 ♘bd5 14. ♙xd5). Here Black securely guards the d5 square in front of the isolated pawn and it is not so obvious how White can try for the initiative.



Position after 11...g5.

12. d5            ♖xd5

Unfortunately for Black the capture 12...exd5 leads to an immediate catastrophe after 13. ♗xf6 dxc4 14. ♘d5 ♗d8 15. ♘xe7+ ♗xe7 16. ♘e5.

13. ♗xf6            exd5

14. ♘d5            ♗d8

15. ♘xe7+        ♗xe7

16. ♗e1

16. ♗d6 was probably simpler.

16. ...            ♗e8

17. ♗xe7        ♗xe7

18. ♗d5

and White wins a pawn.

### I. Dorfman – D. Barua

Elista (Olympiad) 1998

1. c4            e5

2. ♘c3        ♘c6

3. ♘f3        g6

4. d4

White demonstrates a firm desire at such an early stage to gain a static advantage. He changes the central pawn structure and creates an outpost at d5.

4. ...            exd4

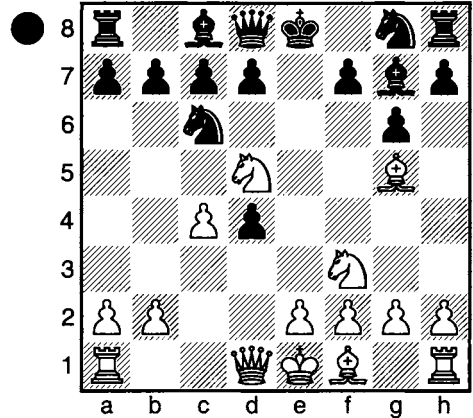
5. ♘d5

I considered the alternative 5. ♘xd4 ♗g7 6. ♗e3, maintaining the evaluation, to be artificial and suspicious, but on the sixth

move it is possible to exchange knights with a slightly better position. This is why Black increasingly often prefers 3...f5.

5. ...            ♗g7

6. ♗g5



6. ...            f6?

A naïve reply, allowing White not only to increase, but, and this is significantly more important, to consolidate his static superiority.

It was essential to go without fail for one of the dynamic continuations:

A) 6... ♗ce7 7. ♘xd4 c6 8. ♘c3 h6 9. ♗f4 d5 10. e3 ♗f6;

B) 6... ♗f6 7. ♘xd4 h6 8. ♗xf6 ♗xf6 9. ♘b5 ♗e5 10. f4 a6 11. fxe5 axb5 12. cxb5 ♗xe5 13. ♗d4 d6.

7. ♗f4            d6

8. ♘xd4        ♘xd4

9. ♗xd4        ♗e7

10. g3            0-0

11. ♗g2        ♘c6

12. ♗d2        ♗e5

13. b3            c6

14. ♘c3        ♗f7

This last manoeuvre shows that Black is already at a loss.

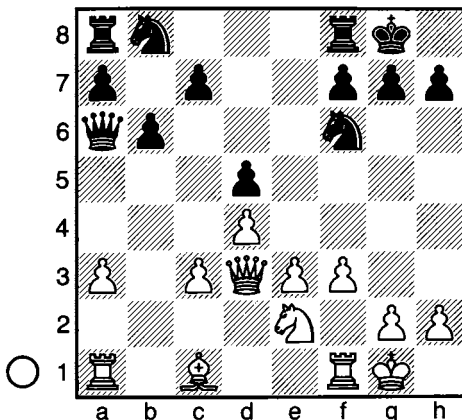
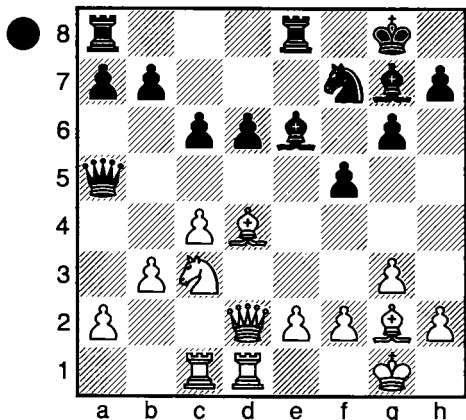
15. 0-0        f5

16. ♗a1        ♗a5

17. ♗fd1        ♗e6

18. ♗e3        ♗fe8

19. ♗d4



Position after 13... ♜a6

The static evaluation is dismal for Black:

$$1. \pm 2. = 3. \pm 4. \pm$$

And in addition, here it is irreversible on account of the lack of any dynamic possibilities.

### B.Alterman – G.Dizdar

Dresden (Zonal Tournament) 1998

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 1.  | d4   | d5    |
| 2.  | c4   | e6    |
| 3.  | ♘c3  | ♙b4   |
| 4.  | e3   | ♘f6   |
| 5.  | a3   | ♙xc3+ |
| 6.  | bxc3 | 0-0   |
| 7.  | cxd5 | exd5  |
| 8.  | ♙d3  | b6    |
| 9.  | ♘e2  | ♙a6   |
| 10. | ♙xa6 | ♘xa6  |
| 11. | ♙d3  | ♙c8   |
| 12. | 0-0  | ♘b8   |
| 13. | f3   | ♙a6   |

After a classical opening the two players have made their intentions perfectly clear. Thus White will aim to advance his central pawns, activating his bishop in the process. Black, on the other hand, will try to exploit the complex of weak light squares on the opponent's queenside and also the c-file, relying on the strength of the queen + knight tandem.

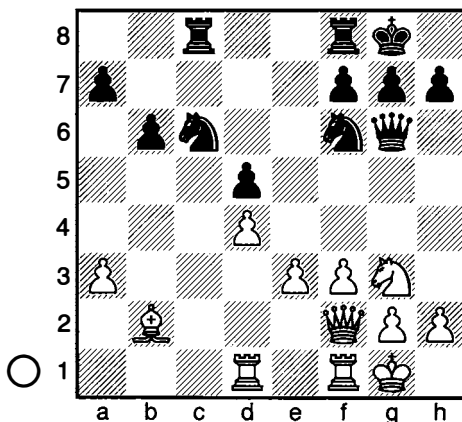
14. ♙c2 c5  
15. ♘g3

The Israeli grandmaster plays logically, aiming for the advance of his e-pawn. Opening the position by 15...♘bd7 (15...bxc5 16.c4 ♙xc4 17.♙xc4 dxc4 18.♙b2 ♘bd7 19.♙ac1 ♙ab8 is also possible) 16.cxb6 ♘xb6.

15. ... ♘c6  
16. ♙b2 ♙a8

After 16...♙a5 17.e4 White's dreams would have been completely realised.

17. ♙f2 cxd4  
18. cxd4 ♙d3  
19. ♙ad1 ♙g6



At the end of a series of logical moves by both sides the play has reached a critical point. White must respond vigorously to the threat of a positional squeeze. At first sight Black appears to have excellent control of the centre, but nevertheless a breakthrough is possible!

20. e4!            ♖e7

After the pawn capture 20...dxe4 21.fxe4 ♖xe4 (things would be more difficult for White after 21...♙fe8 22.e5) 22.♖xe4 ♙xe4 23.d5 ♖a5 24.♙xg7 ♖xg7 25.♙f6+ ♖g8 26.♙f3 the punishment is as rapid as it is severe.

21. a4!

Exploiting the fact that the pawn is still immune on account of 21...dxe4 22.fxe4 ♖xe4 23.♖xe4 ♙xe4 24.♙del ♙b7 25.♙a3 ♙c7 26.♙e2 ♙e8 (26...♙fc8 27.♙xe7 ♙e8 28.♙xf7) 27.♙xf7, White takes a solid hold on the initiative.

21. ...            ♙fe8

22. ♙a3            ♖h5

23. ♖e2            f5

24. ♙xe7

Here we must stop for a moment, to record the important changes in the static evaluation, which for the first time are inclined in White's favour:

1. ± 2. = 3. ± 4. ±

24. ...            ♙xe7

25. ♙h4            ♙ce8

26. e5            ♙c7

27. ♙f2            ♙h6

28. ♖g3            ♙c1

29. ♙df1            ♖xg3

30. ♙xh6            ♙xf1+

31. ♙xf1            gxh6

32. hxg3            ♙c8

33. ♖f2            ♙c4

34. ♖e3            ♙xa4

35. ♖f4            ♙xd4+

36. ♖xf5            ♙c4

37. ♖e6            d4

38. ♖d5?

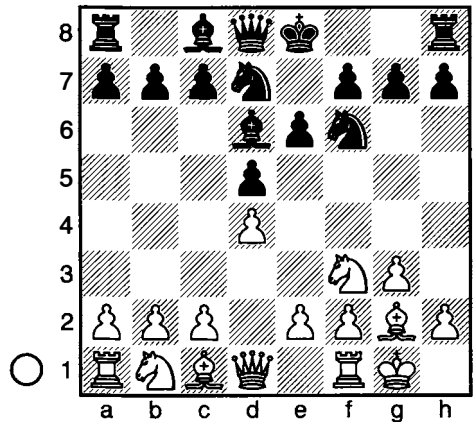
Up till this point White's play was close to excellent, but here he misses a win after 38.♙d1 followed by 39.♖d7.

38...♙c2 39.♙d1 ♙c8 40.e6 ♖f8 41.f4 ♖e7 42.f5 d3 43.♖e4 ♙d8 44.♙d2 ♖f6 45.♙xd3 ♙xd3 46.♖xd3 b5 47.♖d4 b4 48.g4 a5 ½-½

## I. Dorfman – D. Guigonis

French Championship, Meribel 1998

1.	♖f3	d5
2.	g3	♖d7
3.	d4	e6
4.	♙g2	♖gf6
5.	0-0	♙d6



An important moment. Black is playing for e6-e5, after which he will acquire an outpost at e4. For his part, White is trying to get in e2-e4 first and to gain a corresponding outpost at e5.

6. ♖c3            a6

One can understand the French master. He really does not want to allow the knight sortie to b5 followed by ♙f4, forcing a retreat over the entire front. It would appear that e2-e4 also cannot be prevented, since Black is clearly worse after 6...♙b4 7.♙d3 c5 8.a3 c4 9.♙e3 ♙d6 10.b3 ♖b6 11.a4.

7. e4            ♖xe4

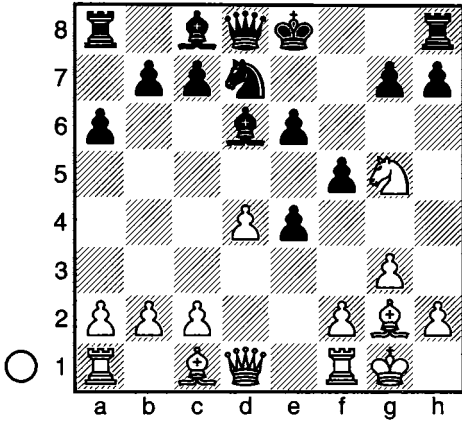
The critical line, since after the quiet 7...dxe4 8.♖g5 0-0 9.♖gxe4 ♙e7 10.♙e2 Black would face a cheerless defence.

8. ♖xe4            dxe4

9. ♖g5            f5?



9...0-0 10.♘xe4 ♕e7 reduces to the previous variation. In his striving not to make concessions Black oversteps the bounds of acceptable risk. Psychologically this is easily done, since to accept the incorrectness of his entire conception is not easy.



10. f3!

The right way. After the regaining of the pawn Black would have got away with a slight fright.

10. ... exf3

It really is better to force the opponent to demonstrate a series of the only possible winning moves, than to suffer without any hope after 10...♗f6 11.fxe4 fxe4 12.♗xe4.

11. ♗xe6! ♜e7

12. ♜e1! ♗e5

The only move.

13. dxe5 ♘b4 (D)

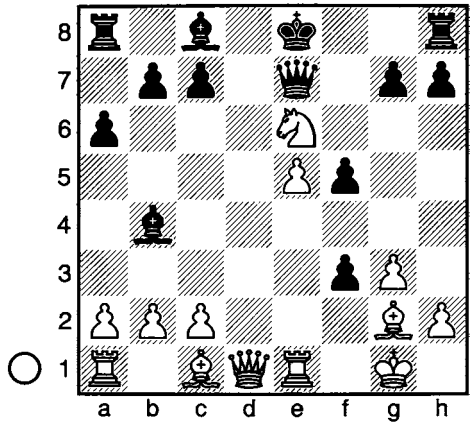
14. ♗xg7+!

The culminating moment of the game. It was not yet too late to throw away the win, by continuing 14.♘g5 ♜xe6 15.♜d8+ ♔f7 16.♜xh8 fxg2 (16...♜b6+? 17.♘e3; 16...♘xe1 17.♘xf3 ♜b6+ 18.♔h1 ♜f2 19.e6+ ♘xe6 20.♘h5+ g6 21.♜xh7+) 17.c3 ♘c5+ 18.♘e3 ♜xe5 19.♘xc5 ♜xc5+ 20.♔xg2 ♜c6+ (20...♜d5+ 21.♔f2+–) 21.♔f2 ♜b6+ 22.♔f1 ♘e6:

A) 23.♜xh7 ♘c4+ 24.♔g2 ♘d5+:

A1) 25.♔h3 ♜f2 26.♜h5+ (26.♜e7+ ♔xe7 27.♜xg7+ ♔d6 28.♜f6+ ♔c5–) 26...♔f6 27.♜g1 ♘f3 and Black wins;

A2) 25.♔f1 ♘c4+ with perpetual check;  
B) 23.♜xa8 ♘c4+ 24.♔g2 ♘d5+ 25.♔f1 ♘c4+ with the same draw.



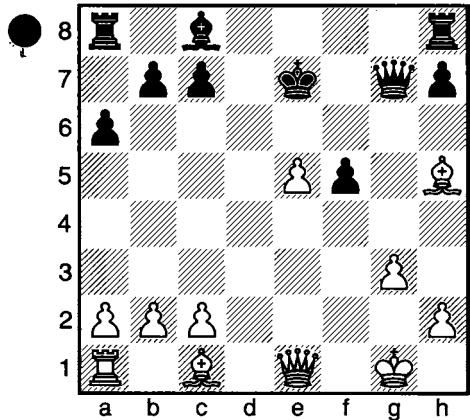
Position after 13...♘b4

14. ... ♜xg7

15. ♘xf3 ♘xe1

16. ♘h5+ ♔e7

17. ♜xe1



A critical position – the end of a series of forced moves. White had it in mind before his 14th move. Black's position is completely hopeless statically.

17. ... a5

If 17...c5, then 18.♜a5 is decisive.

18. ♜c3! ♜a6

After 18...♔d8 White was intending 19.♙g5+! ♖xc5 20.♜d1+ ♙d7 21.e6 with a decisive advantage.

- |     |       |     |
|-----|-------|-----|
| 19. | ♖xc7+ | ♙d7 |
| 20. | ♖c5+  | ♔d8 |
| 21. | ♙d2   | ♜c6 |
| 22. | ♖xa5+ | ♔e7 |
| 23. | ♙b4+  |     |

Black resigns, since to play on after 23...♔e6 24.♜d1 would be simply indecent.

### I.Dorfman – M.Dvoretsky

43rd USSR Championship, Yerevan 1975

- |    |     |     |
|----|-----|-----|
| 1. | ♘f3 | ♘f6 |
| 2. | c4  | g6  |
| 3. | g3  | ♙g7 |
| 4. | ♙g2 | 0-0 |
| 5. | 0-0 | d6  |
| 6. | ♘c3 | e5  |
| 7. | ♜b1 | ♘c6 |

The essence of the opening becomes clear. I more expected 7...a5 8.d3 ♘c6 9.a3 h6 10.b4 axb4 11.axb4 ♙e6 12.b5 ♘e7.

- |     |     |        |
|-----|-----|--------|
| 8.  | b4  | ♙f5    |
| 9.  | d3  | ♜d7    |
| 10. | b5  | ♘e7    |
| 11. | ♜e1 | ♙h3    |
| 12. | ♙h1 | h6 (D) |

In my view the static evaluation is positive for Black, since the white king may be attacked:

1. ♜ 2. = 3. = 4. =

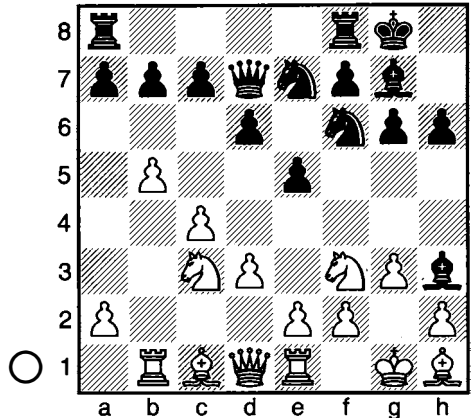
White must seek dynamic resources. Of the two candidate moves, nothing is promised by 13.c5 ♖e6! (13...dxc5 14.♘xe5 ♖d4 15.♘c4±). Hence there only remains the second.

13. d4

After the opening of the position White's king is not in danger, and he is clearly stronger in the centre. In addition, Black begins to suffer on account of his badly placed knight at e7.

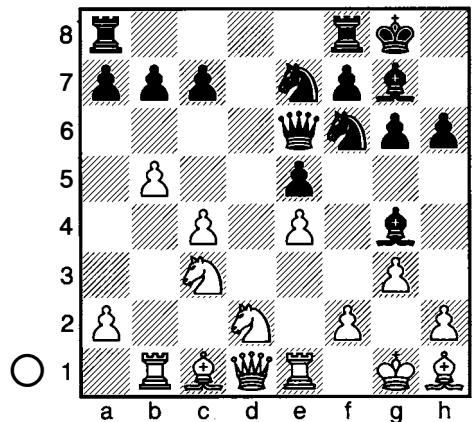
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 13. | ...  | ♖e6  |
| 14. | dxe5 | dxe5 |
| 15. | ♘d2  | ♙f5  |

Against his will Black has been drawn into central play and he tries to get away with the minimal damage.



Position after 12...h6

16. e4 ♙g4



17. ♙f3 ♙xf3

From now on the static evaluation is positive for White. The point is that, because of the pawn structure, Black's bishops are passive.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 18. | ♖xf3 | c6   |
| 19. | ♙a3  | ♜fe8 |
| 20. | ♘b3  | b6   |
| 21. | ♜ed1 |      |

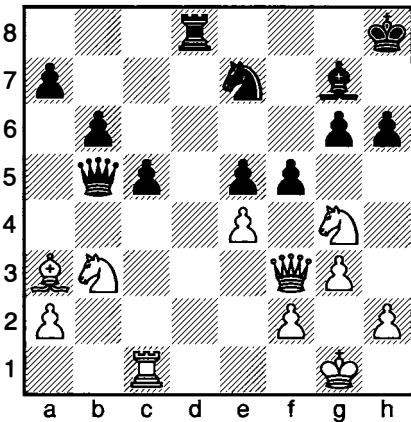
A strong tactical blow. Unexpectedly the black queen finds itself in an uncomfortable position. 22.♖d6 is threatened, and in the event of 21...♖ad8 22.♖xd8 ♖xd8 23.♙xe7 ♗xe7 24.bxc6 followed by 23.♘d5 Black will not escape.

Such concrete play also has a 'para-chess' explanation: to outplay Dvoretzky in the middlegame is no great achievement. His chief attribute is the saving of difficult positions, which, incidentally, he clearly demonstrates in the further course of the game.

21. ... ♗xc4

The best practical chance.

22. ♖bc1 c5  
 23. ♖d6 ♖ad8  
 24. ♖xd8 ♖xd8  
 25. ♘d5 ♗xb5  
 26. ♘xf6+ ♙h8  
 27. ♘g4 f5



28. ♘e3

Up till now it was hard to think of anything better, but here White could have spared his opponent unnecessary suffering (and himself, correspondingly, the need to analyse the adjourned position) by playing 28.exf5 ♘xf5 29.♙b2 ♘d4 30.♙xd4 exd4 31.♘xh6 ♖f8 32.♘f7+ ♗g8 33.♘d6 ♗d7 34.♗d5+ ♗h7 35.♖xc5 (35.♖e1 ♖f6) 35...bxc5 36.♘xc5 ♗e7 (or 36...♖f5 37.♗xf5 ♗xd6 38.♗h3+ with a great advantage) 37.♘e6

♖f6 38.♘g5+ ♗h6 39.♘df7+. Here Black can resign.

28. ... ♗a4  
 29. ♘c4 ♗c6  
 30. ♙b2 ♗e6  
 31. ♗e2

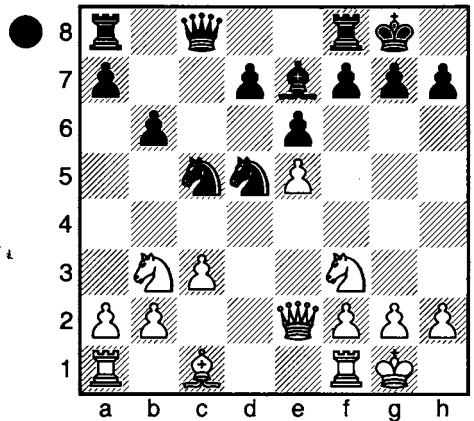
There is no longer a clear win: 31.exf5 gxf5 32.♗h5 ♘c6 33.♘e3 ♖f8 34.g4 fxg4 35.♗xg4 ♗f7.

31. ... ♘c6  
 32. exf5 gxf5  
 33. f4

and after certain adventures White managed to overcome the technical difficulties.

I.Dorfman – A.Dunnington

Cannes 1995



As a result of a rather unusual opening a critical position has arisen.

14. ... f6?

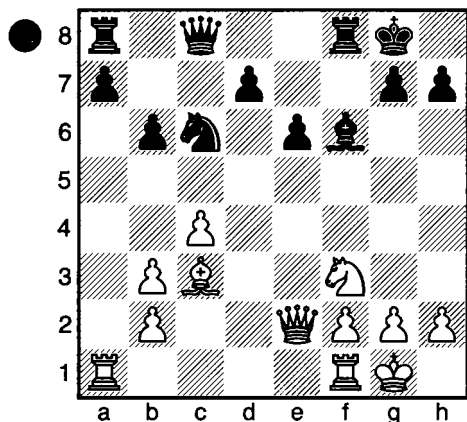
This idea is clearly inappropriate. The move not only creates irreparable defects in the pawn structure, but also weakens the static position of the king.

In return Black does not acquire any appreciable dynamic play. In other words, the exchange that takes place cannot be considered equivalent. **Classic play would be the modification of the centre by 14...d6.** 14...d6 15.♘xc5 (15.c4 ♘b4=; 15.♘bd4 dxe5 16.♘xe5 ♙f6) 15...♗xc5 16.c4:

A) 16...♖b4 17.a3 ♘c6 18.♙e3 (18.b4 ♘d4 19.♘xd4 ♗xd4 20.♙b2 ♗f4 21.♙ad1 ♙fd8=) 18...♗a5 19.b4 ♗a4 20.exd6 ♙xd6 21.♙fc1 ♙e7 22.c5 bxc5 23.♙xc5 ♙fc8 24.♗c2 ♗a6, logically avoiding the exchange, since White has a pawn majority on the queenside;

B) 16...♘c7 is also quite sound, although less aesthetic. White has to reckon with a possible ...d6-d5 and ...b6-b5.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 15. | c4   | ♘xb3 |
| 16. | axb3 | ♘b4  |
| 17. | exf6 | ♙xf6 |
| 18. | ♙d2  | ♘c6  |
| 19. | ♙c3  |      |

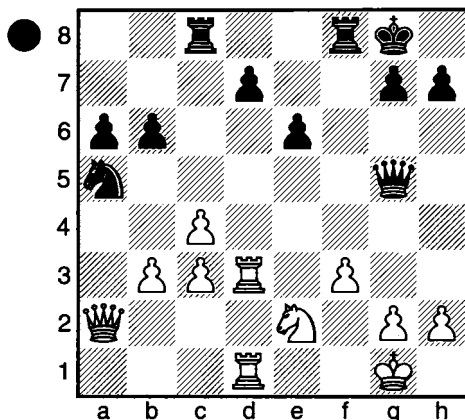


The play now follows a pattern which has already been described many times and demonstrated in similar situations.

**White consolidates his static advantage without hurrying, improving the placing of each piece, and only then, after reducing risk to the minimum, does he turn to positive action.**

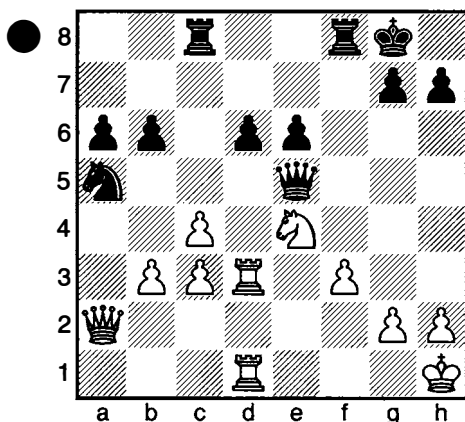
- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 19. | ...  | ♗c7  |
| 20. | ♙fd1 | ♙ad8 |
| 21. | ♙d3  | ♙xc3 |
| 22. | bxc3 | ♘a5  |
| 23. | ♗c2  | ♗f4  |
| 24. | ♙ad1 | ♗f5  |
| 25. | ♘d4  | ♗e4  |
| 26. | f3   | ♗g6  |
| 27. | ♗e2  | ♙de8 |

- |     |      |     |
|-----|------|-----|
| 28. | ♙e3  | ♙c8 |
| 29. | ♗a2  | ♗g5 |
| 30. | ♙ed3 | a6  |
| 31. | ♘e2  |     |



The arrangement of the forces is completed. The knight heads for e4, giving White access to the opponent's numerous weaknesses.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 31. | ...  | ♗c5+ |
| 32. | ♙h1  | ♗f2  |
| 33. | ♙3d2 | d6   |
| 34. | ♘g3  | ♗e3  |
| 35. | ♙d3  | ♗e5  |
| 36. | ♘e4  |      |



Black suffers decisive loss of material. The game is very typical of the method under

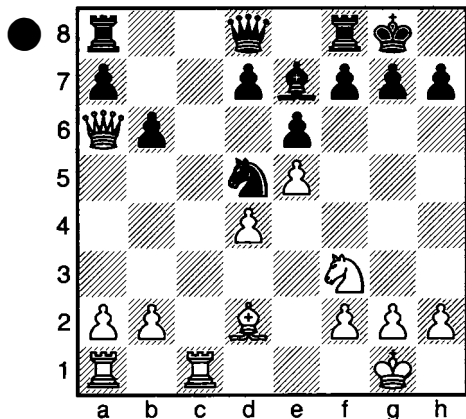
discussion and a valuable one for the reader, being a straightforward one for him to grasp.

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 36. | ...  | ♖c6  |
| 37. | ♜xd6 | ♗d8  |
| 38. | ♜e4  | ♖xd3 |
| 39. | ♖xd3 | ♖c8  |
| 40. | h3   | h6   |
| 41. | c5   | 1-0  |

Although it rarely happens, even grandmasters are sometimes susceptible to mistakes of this sort. I remember a game which I had to analyse in my capacity as captain of the French Olympiad team.

**A.Grosar – B.Kouatly**  
Manila (Olympiad) 1992

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 1.  | e4   | c5   |
| 2.  | ♜f3  | e6   |
| 3.  | c3   | ♜f6  |
| 4.  | e5   | ♜d5  |
| 5.  | d4   | cxd4 |
| 6.  | cxd4 | b6   |
| 7.  | ♗d3  | ♗a6  |
| 8.  | 0-0  | ♖c8  |
| 9.  | ♗xa6 | ♜xa6 |
| 10. | ♗d2  | ♗e7  |
| 11. | ♖a4  | ♜ac7 |
| 12. | ♖c1  | 0-0  |
| 13. | ♜c3  | ♖d8  |
| 14. | ♜xd5 | ♜xd5 |
| 15. | ♖a6  |      |



At the conclusion of the opening Black has gained a static advantage, consisting of his better pawn structure and, as a consequence, the difference in the scope of the bishops. The white rooks have no invasion squares on the c-file.

Black has no particular problems. After 15...d6 16.♖c6 h6 he can harmoniously deploy his heavy pieces by ...♗d7, ...♖fd8 and ...♖ab8.

- |     |     |    |
|-----|-----|----|
| 15. | ... | f6 |
|-----|-----|----|

**After this move, which fails to meet the demands of the position, Black launches into unclear play with chances for both sides.**

How can one explain this decision, such a shocking one for a professional?! It seems to me that Kouatly considered his position to be inferior, and in a panic he looked for counterplay on the kingside. Naturally, he lost control over the situation, although his move could have had at least some point, if White had been obliged to continue 16.exf6 gxf6 17.♖c2 ♖h8 18.♖ac1 ♖g8 19.♗d3 ♗e8.

But White is free in his choice...

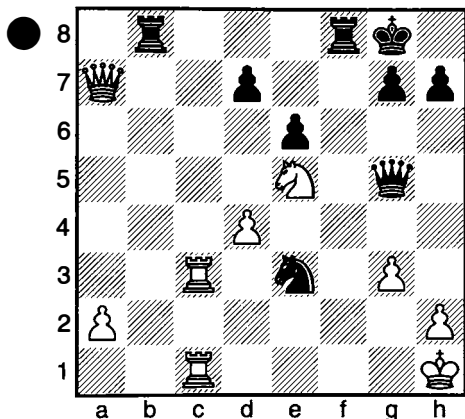
- |     |      |
|-----|------|
| 16. | ♖c4? |
|-----|------|

A mistake in reply, allowing the opponent to sharpen the position. **In what is now a statically superior position, prophylaxis by 16.b3 would have been appropriate.**

- |     |      |      |
|-----|------|------|
| 16. | ...  | b5   |
| 17. | ♖xb5 | ♖b8  |
| 18. | ♖a6  | ♖xb2 |
| 19. | exf6 | ♗xf6 |
| 20. | ♖xa7 | ♗h4  |
| 21. | ♖ac1 |      |

White would have lost after 21.♖d1 ♖xf3 22.gxf3 ♖xd2 23.♖xd2 ♖g5+ 24.♖h1 ♖xd2 25.♖c8+ ♖f7 26.♖xd7+ ♗e7.

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 21. | ...  | ♗xf2+ |
| 22. | ♖h1  | ♖b8   |
| 23. | ♜e5  | ♗e3   |
| 24. | ♗xe3 | ♜xe3  |
| 25. | ♖4c3 | ♖g5   |
| 26. | g3   |       |



26. ... ♖b2?

The French player misses the pretty tactical blow 26...♖b1 27.♖xb1 ♕f5.

27. ♖c8 ♕f5

28. ♕a8

and White won this game of many mistakes.

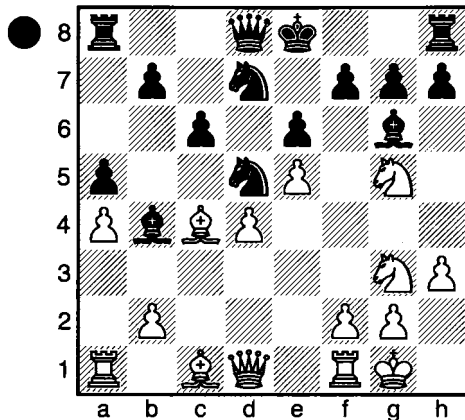
To conclude this chapter I offer the following example, which is of some importance for opening theory.

### J.Piket – A.Kogan Antwerp 1998

- |     |      |       |
|-----|------|-------|
| 1.  | d4   | ♘f6   |
| 2.  | c4   | c6    |
| 3.  | ♘c3  | d5    |
| 4.  | ♘f3  | dx c4 |
| 5.  | a4   | a5    |
| 6.  | e4   | ♗g4   |
| 7.  | ♗xc4 | e6    |
| 8.  | 0–0  | ♗b4   |
| 9.  | e5   | ♘d5   |
| 10. | ♘e4  | ♘d7   |
| 11. | h3   | ♗h5   |
| 12. | ♘g3  | ♗g6   |
| 13. | ♘g5  |       |

Already after White's 9th move the evaluation became positive for Black. The active knight manoeuvre shows clearly that White

intends to seek chances against the enemy king. I should mention in passing that in the event of 13.h4 h6 14.h5 ♗h7 15.♗d3 ♗xd3 16.♕xd3 0–0 Black's position would have been solid enough.

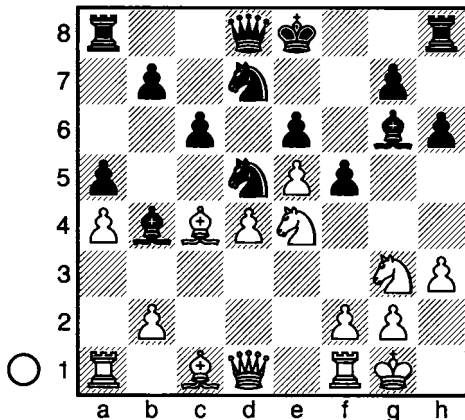


13. ... h6

The alternative 13...♗7b6 14.♗b3 (14.♗d3 ♗e7) 14...h6 15.♗5e4 ♕h4, aimed at consolidating the position of the king, was more to the point.

On the other hand, the inappropriate 13...♗5b6 14.♗xe6 fxe6 15.♗xe6 would have allowed the opponent to begin a direct attack with material approximately equal.

14. ♗5e4 f5?



Quite unexpectedly Black switches to dynamic lines. His panic may have been induced by the pressure on the king, which White develops in the variation 14...0-0 15.♖g4.

I think that the position demands a static treatment such as 14...♟7b6 15.♙d3 ♖h4 or 14...♟e7. Here the knight aims for f5, to consolidate Black's set-up.

15. ♙xd5

After 15.exf6 ♟7xf6 16.♟c5 ♙xc5 17.dxc5 ♖e7 Black's dreams could have been realised.

15. ... cxd5

From now on Black's problems become insoluble, whereas after 15...exd5 16.♟d6+ ♙xd6 17.exd6 0-0 18.♙f4 ♖f6 19.♞e1 ♞ae8 20.♖d2 ♙f7 out of three possible continuations White would have had to choose the only correct one:

A) 21.♖xa5 ♖xd4 (21...g5 22.♙e5 ♟xe5 23.dxe5 ♞xe5 24.d7 ♞xe1+ 25.♞xe1 ♙g6 26.♖c7 f4 27.♟f1±) 22.♙e3 ♖f6 23.♖c7 f4 24.♙xf4 ♖xf4 25.♖xd7 ♖xf2+ 26.♟xf2 ♙e6+ 27.♟g1 ♙xd7 with advantage to Black;

B) 21.♖c3 ♖h4 22.♖f3 ♙e6 with a complicated game;

C) 21.♞xe8 ♞xe8 22.♞e1 ♞xe1+ 23.♖xe1 ♖xd4 24.♖e7 ♖xf4 25.♖xd7 with a serious advantage to White.

16.	♟d6+	♙xd6
17.	exd6	0-0
18.	♙f4	♟b6
19.	♖b3	♙e8
20.	♞fc1	♟c4
21.	♞xc4	dx4
22.	♖xc4	

and Piket was able to transform his advantage into a win on the 39<sup>th</sup> move.

**Index of players**

A.Adorjan	16	V.Gavrikov	31
L.Alburt	26	N.Giffard	125
B.Alterman	129	A.Gipslis	37
V.Anand	14,33,50,55,61, 115,116	I.Glek	11
U.Andersson	16,53,110	M.Godena	24,106
D.Anic	123	L.Gofstein	24
E.Arlandi	98	M.Golan	75
L.Aronian	67	A.Grosar	135
L.Aronin	22	A.Groszpeter	77
D.Barua	69,128	D.Guigonis	130
J.Benitah	32,114	M.Gurevich	26,66,101
P.Benko	44	V.Gurevich	68
J.Bielczyk	37	H.Hamdouchi	49
V.Bologan	13	A.Hauchard	80,113
G.Borgo	98	M.Herink	95
T.Bosboom		V.Hort	109,110
-Llanchava	68	T.Horvath	87
M.Botvinnik	72,73,97	V.Ivanchuk	42,105
D.Bronstein	71	B.Ivanovic	26
A.Butnoryus	28	V.Jansa	30,69
J.Capablanca	96	Ye Jiangchuan	52,65
L.Comas Fabrego	118	A.Jussupov	31
O.Cvitan	100	G.Kamsky	115
O.De la Riva	38	A.Karpov	29,34,39,59,61,88, 111,120
J.Diaz	76	J.Karr	75
G.Dizdar	129	G.Kasparov	17
S.Dolmatov	88	Ł.Kavalek	30
I.Dorfman	20,31,47,49,52,56,66, 69,76,80,83,84,87,89, 89,102,106,107,112, 113,118,119,122,123, 125,126,127,128,130, 132,133	R.Kazimdzhanov	89
A.Dreev	82	P.Keres	44
A.Dunnington	133	A.Khalifman	26,89
M.Dvoretzky	132	R.Kholmov	22
J.Ehlvest	63	J.Klovans	31
E.Ermenkov	52	A.Kogan	136
M.Euwe	18	P.Konguvel	69
A.Faboul	21	A.Konstantinopolsky	27
A.Fedorov	12	V.Korchnoi	34,36,108
R.Fischer	109	B.Kouatly	135
L.Fressinet	107	V.Kovacevic	51
J.Gallagher	38	V.Kramnik	42,63,105
D.Garcia Ilundain	84	G.Laketic	97
		Em.Lasker	96
		A.Lesiege	78
		G.Levenfish	27
		M.Litinskaya	46
		L.Ljubojevic	39,63,111
		A.Lukin	127
		S.Makarychev	58



M.Makogonov	97	Z.Varga	48
V.Malisauskas	11	P.Verdier	102
S.Marjanovic	126	A.Vitolins	9
G.Maróczy	18	A.Yusupov	14
J.Mason	79	A.Zlochevsky	97
S.Matveeva	46	I.Zugic	78
J.Mieses	79		
A.Miles	58		
V.Neverov	77		
P.Nikolic	53		
A.Onischuk	100,112		
D.Pavasovic	67		
T.Petrosian	71,72,103,108,108		
G.Pfeiffer	103		
J.Piket	136		
J.Polgar	63		
L.Polugayevsky	23,95		
R.Ponomariov	101		
L.Psakhis	10		
D.Reinderman	47		
A.Roizman	17		
E.Rozentalis	13		
A.Saidy	23		
K.Sakaev	12		
V.Salov	120		
K.Scheidegger	83		
F.Schmit	114		
H.Schussler	10		
A.Shabalov	9		
L.Shamkovich	60		
A.Shirov	33		
G.Sigurjonsson	122		
I.Smirin	65,122		
V.Smyslov	35,81,85		
B.Spasky	108		
A.Stefanova	20		
L.Stein	35,122		
A.Suetin	28		
L.Szabo	36		
M.Tal	73,85		
J.Talamon	21		
J.Timman	50		
S.Tiviakov	56,82		
E.Torre	29		
Ma.Tseitlin	119		
V.Uhlmann	81		
A.Valchini	32		
L.Van Wely	55,116		

**Index of openings****Flank Openings**

A06 106; A07 67; A08 107

**English Opening**A17 35, 42, 63; A22 36; A26 132; A27  
128; A29 77, 78; A30 102**1.d4 Miscellaneous**

A41 84

**Dutch Defence**

A85 21

**Pirc Defence/Modern Defence**

B07 122

**Caro-Kann Defence**

B18 56, 82

**Sicilian Defence**B22 135; B28 83; B34 68, 69; B35 116;  
B45 79, 118; B49 120; B66 87; B70 69;  
B76 115; B85 39; B90 38; B92 61, 85**French Defence**

C02 53

**Russian Defence**

C42 13, 14

**Ruy Lopez/Spanish**

C96 52

**1.d4 d5 Miscellaneous**

D02 123, 130

**Queen's gambit**D11 20; D16 136; D20 55; D21 127; D24  
97; D34 101; D38 66; D45 98, 105; D52  
24, 98**Grünfeld Defence**

D90 81; D94 80, 126

**Catalan Opening**

E05 112

**Nimzo-Indian Defence**






E32 63, 73; E40 129; E49 89

**King's Indian Defence**

E61 125



## Symbols

	King
	Queen
	Rook
	Knight
	Bishop
0-0	castle
x	capture
+	check
++	double check
#	checkmate
1-0	win to White
0-1	win to Black
½-½	draw
!	good move
!!	brilliant move
?	bad move
??	blunder
!?	interesting move
?!	dubious move
+—	winning advantage to White
±	clear advantage to White
±	slight advantage to White
=	equality
-+	winning advantage to Black
∓	clear advantage to Black
∓	slight advantage to Black
∞	unclear position
∞	with compensation for the material
↑	with initiative



Achévé d'imprimer en octobre 2002  
sur les presses de la SEPEC  
Rue de Prony - ZAC des Bruyères - 01960 PERONNAS  
Dépot légal 4<sup>ème</sup> trimestre 2002  
Imprimé en France



Not only is International Grandmaster Iossif Dorfman feared as a player; he is even more renowned as one of the world's best chess trainers. Most notably, he has coached Kasparov through four world championships. Today's top grandmasters Veselin Topal and Etienne Bacrot have counted among his pupils - and the latter still does.

In his ground-breaking book "The Method in Chess" the author introduces a small but complete set of basic criteria that are essential in properly evaluating positions. In "The Critical Moment", he puts his theories to test in the most demanding of chess positions: the critical turning points of games, where the decision cannot be delayed, and the player must plan the future course of the game, sometimes even its outcome.

The author only uses high-quality games between top-level players. His careful and often subtle explanations will enable you, the reader, to answer these questions:

- How do I know when I reach a critical moment in my game?
- What measures can I use in evaluating such a position - what really does matter?
- How do I decide on my choice, without calculating long variations?
- How do I pick the most promising plan?

Iossif Dorfman's long experience in teaching is evident throughout the carefully selected examples. He has no equal in understanding how to turn a gifted amateur into a master.

\$ 19.90    £ 12.99

GAME MIND Ltd  
5 Jupiter House  
Calleva Park, Aldermaston  
Reading, Berks, ENGLAND  
<http://www.game-mind.com>

immortal